

Miss Hume

G R A M M A R
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE,
WITH
PRACTICAL EXERCISES,

Nicholas BY
N. WANOSTROCHT.

THE THIRD EDITION;
WITH CONSIDERABLE ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS
BY THE AUTHOR.

c LONDON:

PRINTED FOR J. JOHNSON, N° 72, ST. PAUL'S
CHURCH-YARD; AND J. BOOSEY, N° 39,
KING-STREET, CHEAPSIDE.

M.DCC.LXXXIX.

6252, 42

~~Edure~~ T

Ecrire 227

Eteindre 229

Enduire }
Eclure } 229

Faire 230

Feindre 230

Frere 230

Induire }

Instruire }

Introduire }

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Joindre } 231

Seduire 245

Suffire }

Suivre } 245

Se taire }

Teindre } 246

Traduire }

Traire } 247

Vaincre 248

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Vivre 249

Prendre 242

Produire 244

Reduire 244

Restreindre }

Rire 244

Recd Oct 27 1846
TO THE
Gift of F. J. Child, Tutor in Hart Coll
Honourable Mr. BATHURST.

S I R,

ON my arrival in England, I considered it as a fortunate circumstance, to be first introduced to the honour of being appointed your French master. I now feel myself peculiarly happy, in having this opportunity of making my acknowledgement known to your illustrious family, for the civilities I received, when I was but little known in this country.

From that time, it has been my ambition to render the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR, which now solicits your patronage, in some degree, worthy

of your acceptance. Conscious, as I am, of its many imperfections, and that it stands in need of much indulgence, yet, if it should be found of real utility to the public, your approbation will be no small recommendation; at least, it will shew the world, how ready you are to encourage even the faintest endeavours in useful learning.

I am, with the greatest respect, Sir,

Your much obliged,

and most obedient,

humble servant,

NICOLAS WANOSTROCHT.

P R E.

P R E F A C E.

THAT “ a great book is a great evil” is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upo the ancient maxim, and to bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with; some part of our time must be spent on superfluities, and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient; and what rigorous justice cannot defend may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients,

A 3

cients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the bookseller, I proceed to lay before the reader the general plan of the work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and to point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and to reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprize, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the *grammar*, the *exercise-book*, and the *book of dialogues*. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages, resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart, must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement; by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which, in many instances, differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versa*, which cannot absolutely be done in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred and made use of, throughout all the exercises, plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within reach of the young learner's faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety

propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by small figures, placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

Rules for pronunciation are totally omitted. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with

P R E F A C E.

with accuracy and precision. That he has not sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon him to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author gladly embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgements to the public for the favourable reception given to the former editions; while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received either as a PRIVATE TEACHER or as an AUTHOR. That generous indulgence he again solicits for the acceptance of this new impression.

In this third edition, (which is, in a manner, a new work,) the errors in the former publications

P R E F A C E.

publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions, which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added which could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgement the author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and, at the end of each, are given its several compounds, with large exercises both upon the primitives and compounds.

KENSINGTON,

January 20, 1789.





AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN THE FOLLOWING WORK.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle passive.
adv.	Adverb.
p.	Preposition.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∞	The English word, that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, ¹, ², ³, &c. direct to the construction of the words in the French sentence.

A

P R A C T I C A L
F R E N C H G R A M M A R.

S E C T. I.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, and sentences.

In the FRENCH ALPHABET there are twenty-five letters, viz. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z. Six of these are vowels; so called because each can be distinctly sounded without the assistance of any other letter, namely, a, e, i, o,

B

u,

u, and y. The rest are called CONSONANTS, because they cannot be perfectly sounded without being associated with some vowel, either before or after them.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice: ex. *ba, me, moi, &c.*

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant, ex. *mon, my; livre, book, &c.*

A SENTENCE, or PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete, ex.

Je suis votre ami,

I am your friend.

J'écrivis hier à votre tante,

I yesterday wrote to
your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense; each of the sentences forming part of a period is called member of the period, ex.

*Les grands hommes sont
rares; on doit les respec-
ter, et l'on devroit tou-
jours travailler à se
rendre semblable à eux.*

Great men are scarce; we
ought to respect them,
and be constantly en-
deavouring to resemble
them.

A DISCOURSE, or SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together and arranged according to the rules of the language.

KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

1. L'ARTICLE,

THE ARTICLE.

2. LE NOM,

THE NOUN.

3. LE PRONOM,	THE PRONOUN.
4. LE VERBE,	THE VERB.
5. LE PARTICIPLE,	THE PARTICIPLE.
6. L'ADVERBE,	THE ADVERB.
7. LA PREPOSITION,	THE PREPOSITION.
8. LA CONJONCTION,	THE CONJUNCTION.
9. L'INTERJECTION,	THE INTERJECTION.

Five of them are declinable, that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain little words which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words the, of the, from the, and to the. These, in French, are

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The.
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux,</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing that is the object of discourse: ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread:
<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition, ex.

J'ai vu Mr. votre père I saw your father and
et lui ai parlé. spoke to him.

In this instance, the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject, ex.

Mon frère est malade, My brother is ill.
Ma sœur écrit une lettre, My sister writes a letter.
Votre cousine est punie, Your cousin is punished.

The verb is varied by moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the adjective noun: ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having.
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving.
<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved.
<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb; or to express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality: ex.

Je vous aime sincèrement, I love you sincerely.
Venez demain, Come to-morrow.

In these instances, the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed: ex.

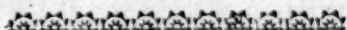
Chez mon ami, At my friend's house.
Devant moi, Before me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse: ex. *et*, and; *car*, for; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul, ex.

Hélas, mon Dieu! Oh, my God! &c.

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use, in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.



S E C T. II.

O F N O U N S.

NO U N S are divided into substantives and adjectives. A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars, yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London; &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form, or quantity, of the substantive to which it belongs, and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *rond*, round; *quarré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when one can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles,</i>	the Articles.
<i>Les Genres,</i>	the Genders.
<i>Les Nombres,</i>	the Numbers.
<i>Les Cas,</i>	the Cases.

ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini,</i>	the Article definite.
<i>L'Article partitif,</i>	the Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini,</i>	the Article indefinite.

The article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

SINGULAR.

Le, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, or h aspirated: ex. *le roi*, the king, &c.

La, for the feminine: ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

L', with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or h not aspirated: ex. *l'enfant*, the child, &c.

PLURAL.

Les, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel: ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les reines*, the queens; *les enfants*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word SOME being always expressed or implied.

SINGULAR.

Du for the mas.
De la for the fem.

{ These two articles are used before nouns beginning with a consonant or h aspirate: ex. *du pain*, some bread: *de la viande*, some meat.

De l', for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an h not aspirated: ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

PLURAL.

Des for both genders: ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'* of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greatest part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine. In English a or an: but it may be observed, that it is always declined with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and the feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as, *une table*, a table. The plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number, as

1. The names of metals: ex. *or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuivre*, brass; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices: ex. *avarice*, avarice; *charité*, charity; *foi*, faith; *haine*, hatred; *orgueil*, pride; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted: ex. *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, smelling; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules:

Artillerie,

<i>Artillerie,</i>	artillery.	<i>Faim,</i>	hunger.
<i>Attirail,</i>	implements.	<i>Fumée,</i>	smoke.
<i>Bonheur,</i>	happiness.	<i>Fuite,</i>	flight.
<i>Colère,</i>	anger.	<i>Gloire,</i>	glory.
<i>Corroux,</i>	wrath.	<i>Honte,</i>	shame.
<i>Enfance,</i>	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse,</i>	youth.
<i>Lait,</i>	milk.	<i>Salut,</i>	safety.
<i>Miel,</i>	honey.	<i>Soif,</i>	thirst.
<i>Noblesse,</i>	nobility.	<i>Sommeil,</i>	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté,</i>	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse,</i>	old age.
<i>Sang,</i>	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only; such as

<i>Ancêtres,</i>	ancestors.	<i>Funérailles,</i>	funerals.
<i>Ayeux,</i>	forefathers.	<i>Frais,</i>	expences.
<i>Atours,</i>	apparel.	<i>Hardes,</i>	clothes.
<i>Ciseaux,</i>	scissors.	<i>Limites,</i>	limits.
<i>Confitures,</i>	sweet-meats.	<i>Mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>Délices,</i>	delight.	<i>Mouchettes,</i>	snuffers.
<i>Dépens,</i>	cost.	<i>Ténèbres,</i>	darkness.
<i>Entrailles,</i>	entrails.	<i>Vivres,</i>	victuals.
<i>Epousailles,</i>	espousals.		

In general, the plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular: ex.

Le père, the father; *les pères,* the fathers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: ex.

<i>Le fils,</i> the son;	<i>les fils,</i> the sons.
<i>Une noix,</i> a walnut;	<i>des noix,</i> walnuts.
<i>Le nez,</i> the nose;	<i>les nez,</i> noses.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *oeu*, *ieu*, or *on*, form their plurals by *x* instead of *s*: ex.

<i>Un chapeau,</i> a hat;	<i>des chapeaux,</i> hats.
<i>Un manteau,</i> a cloak;	<i>des manteaux,</i> cloaks.
<i>Un lieu,</i> a place;	<i>des lieux,</i> places.
<i>Un chou,</i> a cabbage;	<i>des choux,</i> cabbages.

The

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*.

Matou, a great cat; *matous*, great cats.
Trou, a hole; *trous*, holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: *ex*.

Animal, a living creature; *animaux*, living creatures.
Cheval, a horse; *chevaux*, horses.
Travail, work; *travaux*, works.

These only are excepted:

Bal, a ball, *Eventail*, a fan,
Gouvernail, the helm, *Sérail*, a seraglio,
Détail, account, retail, *Portail*, gateway:

Which form their plural in *s*.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

Ayeul, a grandfather; *ayeux*, grandfathers.
Ciel, heaven; *cieux*, heavens.
Oeil, the eye; *yeux*, eyes.
Loi, law; *loix*, laws.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,* testers of a bed.
 des œils de bœuf, ovals.

C A S E S.

There are six cases: *viz*.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>Le Nominatif</i> , | the Nominative. |
| 2. <i>Le Génitif</i> , | the Genitive. |
| 3. <i>Le Datif</i> , | the Dative. |
| 4. <i>L'Accusatif</i> , | the Accusative. |
| 5. <i>Le Vocatif</i> , | the Vocative. |
| 6. <i>L'Ablatif</i> , | the Ablative. |

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

* This term becomes obsolete, it is better to say *un fond de lit*.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb and the accusative follows it. The nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers: ex.

Le roi aime le peuple, the king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the king love? the answer is, THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends: as,

La porte de la chambre, the chamber-door, that is,
the door of the chamber.

La maison de mon père, my father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as

Près du feu, near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before-mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, from or from the.

The DATIVE shews to whom the thing spoken of is given, or to what it is attributed; as,

Donnez cette pomme à mon frère, give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à*, *au*, *à la*, *aux*, to or to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling, or naming, the person to whom the speech is addressed; as,

Ami, qui êtes vous? Friend, who are you?

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its several

several variations; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may the more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

Declension of the Article definite, Le, (the,) before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant. #

SINGULAR.

Nom. LE prince,	the prince.
Le prince est généreux,	the prince is generous.
Gen. DU prince,	of the prince.
Les vertus du prince,	the virtues of the prince.
Dat. AU prince,	to the prince.
Parler au prince,	to speak to the prince.
Acc. LE prince,	the prince.
Aimer le prince,	to love the prince.
Voc. O prince,	O prince.
Abl. DU prince,	from the prince.
Recevoir des lettres du prince,	to receive letters from the prince.

Declension of the Article definite, La, (the,) before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant.

SINGULAR.

Nom. LA princesse,	the princess.
La princesse est aimable,	the princess is amiable.
Gen. DE LA princesse,	of the princess.
Les regards de la princesse,	the looks of the princess.
Dat. A LA princesse,	to the princess.
Donner à la princesse,	to give to the princess.
Acc. LA princesse,	the princess.
Imitez la princesse,	imitate the princess.
Voc. O princesse,	O princess.
Abl. DE LA princesse,	from the princess.
Etre séparé de la princesse,	to be separated from the princess.

Declension

+ Declension of the Article definite, L', (the,) for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel or an h-not aspirate.

SINGULAR.

Nom. L'enfant,	the child.
L'enfant est timide,	the child is fearful.
Gen. DE L'enfant,	of the child.
Le tempérament de l'enfant,	the child's temper, or, the temper of the child.
Dat. A L'enfant,	to the child.
Attribuer à l'enfant,	to attribute to the child.
Acc. L'enfant,	the child.
Admirer l'enfant,	to admire the child.
Voc. O enfant,	O child.
Abl. DE L'enfant,	from the child.
S'éloigner de l'enfant,	to go away from the child.

The plurals of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, are declined, in both genders, by the article *les*, (the.)

PLURAL.

Nom. LES rois,	the kings.
Les rois commandent,	the kings command.
Gen. DES rois,	of the kings.
L'ordre des rois,	the order of the kings.
Dat. AUX rois,	to the kings.
Envoyer aux rois,	to send to the kings.
Acc. LES rois,	the kings.
Respectez les rois,	honour the kings.
Voc. O rois,	O kings.
Abl. DES rois,	from the kings.
Etre loin des rois,	to be far from the kings.

The definite article must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, though the English admit of no article in this case: ex.

L'homme est mortel,	man is mortal.
LE Danemarck, LA Suède, et L'Angleterre, sont les trois royaumes du nord,	Denmark, Sweden, and England, are the three northern kingdoms.

Aimer

Aimer LES pommes et LES poires, to love apples and pears.
Haïr LA paresse, to hate idleness.
LA vertu et LA beauté sont estimables, virtue and beauty are estimable.
L'or est préférable à L'argent, gold is preferable to silver.

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English, ex.

L'homme que vous m'avez recommandé est fort habile, the man whom you recommended me is very skilful.
LES pommes & LES poires de votre jardin sont excellentes, The apples and pears of your garden are excellent.
LA beauté et LA vertu de votre sœur la font admirer, The beauty and virtue of your sister cause her to be admired.
L'or de l'Amérique est préférable à celui de l'Europe, The gold of America is preferable to that of Europe.

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, and before *nouns* adjective used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number*; ex.

LE sel, LA moutarde, et l'huile, sont sur LEstables, The salt, mustard, and oil, are on the tables.
LE blanc, LE rouge, et LE noir, sont trois différentes couleurs, Red, white, and black, are three different colours.

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun immediately followed by a name denoting a degree of consanguinity or kindred, or the name of a particular place to which it belongs: ex.

Alexandre fils de Philippe, Alexander the son of Philip.
Robert frère de Richard, Robert the brother of Richard.
Mon ami demeure à My friend lives in London,
Londres, ville capitale the capital city of Eng-
d'Angleterre, land.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING RULES.

Where is the master of the house? — Virtue
Où, adv. est, v. maître, m. maison, f. Vertu, f.
 is estimable. — The prince spoke to the king.
est, v. estimable, adj. prince, m. parla, v. roi, m.
 Do you² prefer¹ England³ to⁴ France⁵? —
vous, pro. préférez, v. Angleterre, f. France, f.
 To the third page of the book. — Prefer virtue
Troisième, adj. page f. livre, m. — Préférez, v.
 to riches, friendship to money, and utility to pleasure.
richesses, pl. f. amitié, f. argent, m. et, c. utilité, f. plaisir, m.
 The father, mother, and children, are dead.
Père, m. mère, f. enfant, m. sont, v. mort, p. p. +
 The¹ lazy² do³ not⁵ love⁴ work⁶. —
pareseux, adj. ne-pas, adv. aiment, v. ouvrage, m.
 Corn grows for men and grass for
Bled, m. croît, v. pour, p. homme, m. herbe, f.
 cattle. — Justice is the mistress and queen of
bétail, m. Justice, f. est, v. maîtresse, f. reine, f.
 virtue. — Walk in the garden. —
Promenez-vous, v. dans, p. jardin, m.
 Send the child to school. — Give that
Envoyez, v. enfant, m. école, f. Donnez, v. cela, pro.
 to the poor. — Children¹ generally³ like²
pauvre, m. ordinairement, adv. aiment, v.
 apples⁴ and⁵ pears⁶. — Education is to the mind
pomme, f. poire, f. éducation, f. est, v. esprit, m.
 what cleanliness is to the body. — I like
ce que, pro. propreté, f. corps, m. Je, pro. aime, v.
 yellow

yellow and grey. — Peace and plenty make
jaune, m. gris, m. Paix, f. abondance, f. rendent, v.

men happy. — The life of man is short — The
heureux, adj. Vie, f. courte, adj.

enemies were on the mountain. — Love wis-
ennemi, m. étoient, v. sur, pr. montagne, f. Aimez, v. sa-
 dom. Do¹ not³ neglect² study⁴. — Avoid leisure.
gesse, f. négligez, v. étude, f. Evitez, v. loisir, m.

You admire the beauty of the ladies.
Vous, pro. admirez, v. beauté, f. dame, f.

To the thickness of the walls. — Honour is the
épaisseur, f. muraille, f. Honneur, m.

reward of virtue. — She comes from church.
récompense, f. Elle, pro. vient, v. église, f.

We go to the park. — Corn, wheat, and
Nous, pro. allons, v. parc, m. froment, m.

barley, are dear. — I hate milk, butter, and
orge, f. sont, v. cher, adj. hais, v. lait, m. beurre, m.

cheese. — We speak of America and not of
fromage, m. parlons, v. Amérique, f. non-pas, adv.

Poland. — It is the will of the emperor.
Pologne, f. C'est, v. volonté, f. empereur, m.

Bring the knives and forks. — Honour is
Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f.

due to kings. — The fate of nations is governed
lui, p.p. sort, m. nation, f. gouverné, p.p.

by providence. — You play with the boys.
par, p. providence, f. jouez, v. avec, p. garçon, m.

Revenge is the pleasure of a weak² mind¹.
Vengeance, f. plaisir, m. de un faible, adj. esprit, m.

Patience and perseverance are necessary. — Italy
Patience, f. persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. Italie, f.

is the garden of Europe — The Jupiter of the
jardin, m. Europe, f.

heathens was the son of Saturn, and the
payen, m. *étoit*, v. *filz*, m.

father of the Gods:—The desire of glory,
père, m. *Dieu*, m. *désir*, m. *gloire*, f.

riches, power, and pleasure, is a disease of the
pouvoir, m. *une maladie*, f.

mind. — Tranquillity of soul is the height of
âme, f. *Tranquillité*, f. *âme*, f. *comble*, m.

felicity. — Grant us peace. — Have you
félicité, f. *Accordez*, v. *nous*, pro. *paix*, f. *Avez vous*, v.

passed through Spain, Portugal, or Hol-
passé, p. p. *par*, p. *Espagne*, f. *Portugal*, m. *ou*, c. *Hol-*

land? — The most noble of virtues is charity.
lande, f. *plus*, adv. *noble*, adj. *charité*, f.

Carry the grammar to the boys, and the dic-
Portez, v. *grammaire*, f. *dic-*

tionary to the girls. — They come from the
tionnaire, m. *fille*, f. *Ils*, pro. *viennent*, v.

Indies. — Prefer always virtue, prudence,
Inde, f. *Préférez*, v. *toujours*, adv. *prudence*, f.

and good sense, to beauty. — Put the wine,
bon, adj. *sens*, m. *Mettez*, v. *vin*, m.

beer, and cider, on the table. — Give
bierre, f. *cidre*, m. *sur*, p. *table*, f. *Donnez*, v.

me the loaf. — My sister lives
moi, pro. *pain*, m. *Ma*, pro. *sœur*, f. *demeure*, v.

at York, the capital city of the county of the
a, p. *comté*, m.

same name. — (It is said, that America,
même, adj. *nom*, m. *On dit* *que*

France, and Spain, have made peace with Eng-
ont, v. *fait*, p. p.

land.

When,

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed at the beginning of the sentence (in French) and the others after it, with the *genitive* of this article before them, according to their gender and number: as,

Le¹ fils² du³ roi⁴, the¹ king's⁴ son².
La¹ couronne² de³ la reine⁴, the¹ queen's⁴ crown².
La¹ femme² du³ fils⁴ du⁵ the¹ chancellor's⁶ son's⁴
 chancelier⁶, wife².

That is, the son of the king; the crown of the queen; the wife of the son of the chancellor.

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some particular COMMODITY, USE, QUALITY, or LIQUOR, then it must be put in the *dative*: as,

Le¹ pot² au lait³, the¹ milk³-pot².
La¹ bouteille² à l'huile³, the¹ oil³ bottle².
La¹ femme² aux pommes³, the¹ apple³ woman³.

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive, and signifying much, a great deal, many, the *genitive* of this article must always be used: as,

Bien du mérite, much merit.
Bien de l'argent, a great deal of money.
Bien des dames, many ladies.
Bien des livres, many books.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

I have seen the king's apartments, and the
Je, pro. ai, v. vu, p.p. *appartement, m.*

queen's picture. — The children make much
reine, f. portrait, m. *font, v. bien, adv.*

noise. — Bring me the wine-bottle. — The
bruit, adv. Apportez, v. moi, pro. vin, m. bouteille, f.

man's strength is very great.—He has
force, f. est, v. bien, adv. grande, adj. Il, pro. a, v.
 many friends.—Where is the fish market?
bien, adv. amis, m. Où, adv. poisson, m. marché, m.
 They¹ give² you² much⁴ trouble⁵.—(There is)
 Ils, pro. donnent, v. vous, pro. peine, f. Voilà
 the oyster woman.—Where is your wine
buître, f. femme, f. votre, pro. vin, m.
 cellar? —Lend me the maid's
cave, f. Prêtez, v. moi, pro. servante, f.
 cloak.—Give me the ink bottle —This man
mantelet, m. Donnez, v. encre, f. Cet, pro.
 has (a great deal) of money.—Tell (to) the
bien, adv. Dites, v.
 butter man to come here.—We live
beurre, m. de venir, v. ici, adv. Nous, pro. demeurons, v.
 in the poultry-market.
dans, p. volaille, f.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.*
 Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.
 Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.
 Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.
 Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.

* In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by this same article: *ex.*

Y a-t-il du pain ici ?

Is there *any* bread here?

Avez-vous de la viande ?

Have you *any* meat?

A-t-elle acheté des livres ?

Has she bought *any* books?

Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.
 Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

N. A. *des livres*, some books, *des auteurs*, some authors.
 G. A. *de livres*, of or from, &c. *d'auteurs*, of or from, &c.
 Dat. *à des livres*, to, &c. *à des auteurs*, to, &c.

N. B. If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, we must use *de* or *d'*: as,

SINGULAR.

N. A. ?	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
G. A. }	<i>De mauvais vin, De bonne eau, D'excellent pain,</i> Bad wine. Good water. Excellent bread.		
D. à de mauvais vin,	<i>à de bonne eau, à d'excellent pain.</i>		
To bad wine. To good water. To excellent bread.			

PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>D'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned people.
Dat.	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned people.

This last rule is not general; for, there are some substantives, though preceded by an adjective, which require the other article, instead of *de*. However, instances of this kind are very few; they never happen but when the adjective and substantive present to the mind one idea only: as, *Paris est le centre du bon goût*, &c. Paris is the centre of good taste, &c.

This article must be used wherever the English word *SOME* is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence: as,

Du pain & de l'eau lui	Bread and water are suf-
suffisent,	ficient for him.
Apportez du vinaigre, de	Bring some vinegar, mus-
la moutarde, de l'huile,	tard, oil, and forks.
et des fourchettes,	

EXERCISES

EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary to man. — I drink wine and water.
font, v. chose, f. nécessaire, adj. Je, pro. bois, v.

She eats cheese. — Bring me some
Elle, pro. mange, v. moi, pro.

mustard. — Have you bought some paper, pens, and ink? — You always read good books.
moutarde, f. Avez, v. acheté, p. p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f. toujours, adv. lisez, v.

Send him some bread, meat, and potatoes.
Envoyez, v. lui, pro. pomme de terre, f.

Bad wine is not worth good water.
vaut, v.

Do you sell fruits? — He speaks to
vous, vendez, v. fruit, m. Il, pro. parle, v.

learned people. — Buy some tea and sugar.
*gens, f. * Achetez, v. thé, m. sucre, m.*

I have heard good news. — Will you
ai, v. appris, p. p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f. Voulez, v.

eat some beef with turnips and carrots?
manger, v. bœuf, m. avec, p. navet, m. carotte, f.

You have fine fruits. — Do you drink beer?
avez, v. beaux, adj. buvez, v. bière, f.

(Is there) any wine in the bottle?
(Ya-t-il) dans, p. bouteille, f.

She has worthy friends. — Bring me good
Elle, pro. a, v. digne, adj. ami, m. bonne, adj.

pens. — I have given him bread, money, and
donné, p. p. lui, pro.

* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but, when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

clothes. — Lend me some books. — I prefer
habit, m. préfère, v.

good water to bad wine. — She has mo-
Elle, pro. a, v. mo-

desty and prudence. — Bring us some plates.
destie, f. nous, pro. affiete, f.

Will you have some milk or cream? — Miss
ou, c. crème, f. Mademoiselle, f.

Sharp has fine eyes.
a, v. ail, m.

DECLENSION of the ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

All proper names of persons, cities, towns, and vil-
 lages, are declined with this article: ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Pierre,</i>	Peter.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Pierre,</i>	of or from Peter.
Dat.	<i>à Pierre,</i>	to Peter.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Marie,</i>	Maria.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Marie,</i>	of or from Maria.
Dat.	<i>à Marie,</i>	to Maria.

This article, before a noun beginning with a vowel
 or *b* not aspirated, is expressed as follows:

Nom. Acc.	<i>Antoine,</i>	Antony.
Gen. Abl.	<i>d' Antoine,</i>	of or from Antony.
Dat.	<i>à Antoine,</i>	to Antony.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Londres,</i>	London.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Londres,</i>	of or from London.
Dat.	<i>à Londres,</i>	to London.

N. B. It is necessary to observe, that the dative of
 this article, *TO*, used after a word signifying COMING,
 GOING,

GOING, RETURNING, OR SENDING to, placed before the name of a kingdom or province, must be rendered in French by the preposition *EN*: ex.

Mon frère est allé en Italie, My brother is gone to Italy.

Il doit bientôt retourner en Amérique, He is soon to go back again to America.

EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Here is John's brother.—Speak to Martha.
Voici, adv. Jean, m. frère, m. Parlez, v. Marthe, f.

It is Peter's hat. — She goes to Richmond.
C'est, v. chapeau, m. Elle, pro. va, v.

He comes from Paris.—You have Mr.
Il, pro. vient, v. Vous, pro. avez, v. monsieur, m.

Richard's sword.—When¹ will² you³ go⁴
épée, f. Quand, adv. irez, v.

to⁴ France⁵?—Give me Laura's cap.
Donnez, v. moi, pro. Laure, f. bonnet, m.

I (am going) to Croydon.—I have found
Je, pro. vais, v. ai, v. trouvé, p. p.

Andrew's waistcoat. — She (shall come back) to
André, m. veste, f. reviendra, v.

England (next year) — Carry that
l'année prochaine. Portez, v. cela, pro.

to Stephen
Etienne, m.

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of quantity, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

Deux livres de cerises, two pounds of cherries;

Quatre aunes de mousseline, four yards of muslin;

Trop de vin, too much wine;

Moins de mérite, less merit;

Plus de sagesse, more wisdom.

After

After the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the words *quelque*, what; *quelque chose*, something; and *rien*, nothing, ex.

<i>Point de repos,</i>	no rest.
<i>Que de bruit !</i>	what noise !
<i>Que d'intégrité !</i>	what integrity !
<i>Quelque chose* de bon,</i>	something good;
<i>Rien de mauvais,</i>	nothing bad.

Before names of countries, kingdoms, and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, or by a verb signifying coming from : ex.

<i>Le roi d'Angleterre,</i>	the king of England ;
<i>Il arrive de France,</i>	he arrives from France, &c.

EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have bought six yards of cloth.
Je, pro. ai, v. acheté, p.p. drap, m.

Bring me three pounds of veal, and two
Apportez, v. moi, pro. trois, veau, m. deux,
 pounds of mutton.—She has a great num-
mouton, m. Elle, pro. a, v. un grand, adj. nom-
 ber of children.—Do 'not' give³ her²
bre, m. ne-pas, donnez, v. lui, pro.

(too 'many) pears⁶.—I¹ have³ 'no'⁴ daughters⁵.
trop, adv. ai, v. ne-point, fille, f.

Did you see the duke of Bavaria with the
Avez, v. vous, pro. vu, p.p. duc, m. Bavière, f. avec, pr.
 archbishop of York?—We have (so many)
archevêque, m. Nous, pro. avons, v. tant, adv.

grapes.—They have (a little) money.—I
raisin, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. un peu, adv.
 know the king of Prussia.—He has more
connois, v. Prusse, f. Il, pro. a, v.

* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender, but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

friends than you.—(There were) (so many)
ami, m. que, c. vous, pro. Il y avoit, v.

ladies.—He commanded an army of forty
dame, f. commandoit, v. une armée, f. quarante

thousand men.—She¹ says³ ²nothing⁴ true
mille dit, v. ne-rien, adv. vrai, adj.

You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia.
Parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.

Do you² come¹ from³ Italy?
venez, v. Italie? f.

De is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the character, cause, country, matter, nature, and quality: ex.

*Une¹ maison² de brique³, a⁴ brick³ house²;
 Du vin¹ de Bourgogne², Burgundy² wine¹, &c.*

After the adjectives of number, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

Quatre de renvoyés, four sent away, &c.

EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Your¹ sister² has³ a⁴ silk⁶ gown⁵ and a gold
Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f. robe, f. un or, m.

thimble.—We drink Champagne wine.
dé, m. Nous, pro. buvons, v. Champagne, f.

(It is) a marble pillar.—They have a
C'est, v. marbre, m. pillier, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. une

country house—Edinburgh is the capital
campagne, f. maison, f. Edinbourg est, v. capitale, adj.

city of the kingdom of Scotland.—Shut¹ the²
ville, f. royaume, m. Ecosse, f. Fermez, v.

fore⁴ door³.—A lady of wit is a jewel
devant, m. porte, f. Une dame, f. esprit, m. est, v. un joyau, m.

of worth.—(He is) a man of honour.—She has
prix, m. C'est, v. un

bought

bought silver buckles and diamond
acheté, p. p. argent, m. boucle, f. diamant, m.

ear-rings. — Have you spoken to the silk-
pendans d'oreille, m. Avez, v. parlé, p. p. soie, f.

merchant — Give me the upper crust
marchand, m. Donnez, v. moi, pro. dessus, m. croûte, f.

Sixty lost. — Bring me my straw
Soixante perdu, p. p. mon, pro. paille, f.

hat.
chapeau, m.

DE is placed after the adjectives signifying DIMENSION, as, *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep; though there is no article expressed in English; ex.

Une table¹ longue² de dix³ A table¹ ten⁴ feet⁵ long⁶
pieds⁵, et⁶ large⁷ de huit⁸, and⁶ eight⁸ broad⁷.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de* : ex.

Une table de dix pieds de A table ten feet long and
longueur et de huit de eight broad.
largeur,

In this last example, it may be seen that the French and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have a box four inches thick,
*Je, pro. ai, v. une boîte, f. quatre ponce, m. épais-seur, f.**
 ten feet long, and six broad. — I know
dix pied, m. long—neur, f. six large—ur, f. connois, v.
 a man seven feet high. — (It is) a ditch nine
un sept haut—eur, f. C'est, v. un fossé, m. neuf

* Read, *épais*, adjective, *épaisseur*, substantive, and so of the others.
 D
 feet

feet six inches deep, and five feet broad.
profond—eur, f. cinq

(There is) a room fifty paces long and
Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante, pas, m.

twenty broad. — The walls of our garden
vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.

are thirty feet three inches high, and two
font, v. ont, v. trente trois, deux
 broad.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *font*, which is the proper word for the English, ARE, and follows the preceding rule; but, if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the verb *être*, to be, is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, to have, and *de*, before the word of measure, is suppressed. In this last case, the word *ont* must be inserted instead of *font*. Example by the adjective:

*Notre chambre est longue de
 vingt pieds et large de
 douze;*

By the substantive;

Notre chambre a vingt pieds Our room is twenty feet
de longueur et douze de long and twelve broad.
largeur;

When two substantives are joined together by a hyphen, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second; the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the *dative* of this article à: ex.

Un moulin¹ à papier², a paper¹-mill².
Une boîte¹ à poudre², a powder²-box¹.

EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

Gun—powder was invented by a monk.
Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p. p. par, p. moine, m.
 The

The servant has lost the tinder-box, and
a, v. perdu, p. p. fusil, m.

cannot light the candle. If you go to
ne sauroit, v. allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.

London to-morrow, bring me a toupee-
demain, adv. apportez, v. moi, pro. toupet, m.

iron. Have you seen the water-mill which
fer, m. Avez, v. vu, p. p. que, pro.

my father has bought? No, but I have
mon, pro. acheté, p. p. Non, adv. mais, c. ai, v.

seen the wind-mill which your brother has built
vent, m. fait bâtir, v.

at Greenwich. I have found your sister's work-
à, p. trouvé, p. p. ouvrage, m.

bag in the eating-room.
sac, m. dans, p. manger, v. chambre, f.

DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.

Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.

Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.

Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.

Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen.

EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have a hat and a sword.—She speaks of
ai, v. chapeau, m. épée, f. elle, pro. parle, v.
 an officer.—He¹ has² given³ it² to⁵ a sailor⁶.
officier, m. Il, pro. a, v. donné, p. p. le, pro. matelot, m.
 (There are) a bird and a cage.
Voilà, adv. oiseau, m. cage, f.

It must be observed, that the English article *A* or *AN*, before nouns of MEASURE, WEIGHT, NUMBER, and a PART OF TIME, must be rendered in French by the definite article *le, la, les*: ex.

Deux chelins le cent, two shillings *a* hundred.

And by the preposition *par* used in the sense of *EACH, EVERY, OR PER*, ex.

Je lui donne deux chelins par semaine, I give him two shillings *a* week.

A or *an* is not to be expressed when it immediately precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting title, dignity, office, business; or words, which denote the gender, or species, of things; and lastly, after the verb *être*, to be, unless that verb be preceded by *ce* in the third person singular, or the above nouns be followed by one of the relative pronouns, *who, whom, which, &c.* or by an adjective in the superlative degree: ex.

Mr. D—, membre de la chambre des communes, parla beaucoup hier, Mr. D—, *a* member of the house of commons, spoke very much yesterday.

J'ai lu Castor & Pollux, opéra François, I have read *Castor and Pollux*, *a* French opera.

Etes-vous Anglois? Are you *an* Englishman?

Non, Mr. je suis François, No, Sir, I am *a* Frenchman.

Sa sœur est marchande de modes & son frère est tailleur, Her sister is *a* millener and her brother is *a* tailor.

EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Barley	sells	for	three	shillings	<i>a</i>
Orge, f.	<i>se vend</i> , v.		<i>trois</i> , adj.	<i>chelins</i> , m.	
buschel.	That	ale	is	worth	six - pence
boisseau, m.	<i>Cette</i> , pro.	<i>aile</i> , f.	<i>vaut</i> , v.	<i>soixante</i> , m.	
<i>a</i> pint.	Beef	costs	four	pence	<i>a</i> pound.
<i>pinte</i> , f.	<i>Bœuf</i> , m.	<i>coute</i> , v.	<i>quatre</i> , adj.	<i>livres</i> , f.	

This

This lace cost a crown an ell. He
Cette, pro. dentelle, f. couta, v. écu, m. aune, f. ll, pro.

sells his best cloth a guinea a yard.
vend, v. son, pro. meilleur, adj. drap, m. guinée, f. verge, f.

My master comes twice a week. Bur-
Mon, pro. vient, v. deux fois, adv. semaine, f.

gundy wine is sold nine shillings a bottle. My
se vend, v. neuf, adj.

uncle goes to France thrice a year. She
oncle, m. va, v. trois fois, adv. an, m. Elle, pro.

gives three shillings a day and ten pence a mile.
donne, v. jour, m. mille, m.

Are you a physician? No, Sir, I am a
Etes, v. médecin, m. suis, v.

surgeon. Bristol, a sea-port, passes now
chirurgien, m. mer, f. port, m. passe, v. à présent, adv.

for the second city of the kingdom of England.
pour, p.

The king² made⁴ him³ a bishop^s. Is she a
fit, v. le, pro. évêque, m. Est, v.

duchess or a marchioness?
duchesse, f. marquise, f.

OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

RULE to form their FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their masculine, as *conjugal*, conjugal; *fatal*, fatal; *filial*, filial; *natal*, natal; *naval*, naval; *total*, total; and some few others.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders, *ex.*

Un jeune homme, a young man.

Une jeune femme, a young woman.

Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d, é, i, l, n, r, s, t,* and *u*, form their feminine, by adding an *e* mute, *ex.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Grand,</i>	<i>grande, great.</i>
<i>Pol,</i>	<i>polie, polite.</i>
<i>Aimé,</i>	<i>aimée, loved.</i>
<i>Civil,</i>	<i>civile, civil.</i>
<i>Demi,</i>	<i>demie, half.</i>
<i>Nu,</i>	<i>nue, bare, naked.</i>

These two last adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it: *ex.*

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	a half-pound.
<i>Une livre & demie,</i>	a pound and half.
<i>Nu tête,</i>	bare-head.
<i>Nu pieds,</i>	bare-foot.

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, is, et, is, on, os, ot,* and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e* mute, for the feminine, *ex.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Payfan,</i>	<i>Payfanne,</i>
Countryman,	countrywoman.
<i>Gras,</i>	<i>grasse,</i> fat.
<i>Gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i> genteel.
<i>Eternel,</i>	<i>eternelle,</i> eternal.
<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i> alike.
<i>Chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne,</i> christian.
<i>Epais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i> thick.
<i>Bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i> good.
<i>Gros,</i>	<i>grosse,</i> big.
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>folle,</i> foolish.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, *viz.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Beau, bel,*</i>	<i>belle, handsome, fine.</i>
<i>Benin,</i>	<i>benigne, benign.</i>
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite, favourite.</i>

* *Bel, fol, nouvel,* and *vieil,* are used before substantives beginning with a VOWEL or H not aspirated.

<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle, fool.</i>
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraiche, fresh.</i>
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue, long.</i>
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne, malicious.</i>
<i>Mou,</i>	<i>molle, soft.</i>
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle, new.</i>
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille, old.</i>

Adjectives, ending in *c*, add *he* to the *c* for their feminine, *ex.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Blanc,</i>	<i>blanche, white.</i>
<i>Franc,</i>	<i>franche, sincere.</i>
<i>Sec,</i>	<i>sèche, dry, &c.</i>

The four following are excepted :

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Caduc,</i>	<i>caduque, in decay.</i>
<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque, Greek.</i>
<i>Public,</i>	<i>publique, public.</i>
<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque, Turkish.</i>

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for their feminine, *ex.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Bref,</i>	<i>brève, short.</i>
<i>Naïf,</i>	<i>naïve, plain, ingenuous.</i>
<i>Neuf,</i>	<i>neuve, new.</i>
<i>Veuf,</i>	<i>veuve, widow.</i>
<i>Vif,</i>	<i>vive, quick.</i>

Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *se* : *ex.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Douloureux,</i>	<i>douloureuse, dolorous, painful.</i>
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse, happy, &c.</i>
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse, jealous.</i>

The following are excepted :

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Doux,</i>	<i>douce, sweet.</i>
<i>Faux,</i>	<i>fausse, false.</i>
<i>Perplex,</i>	<i>perplexe, perplexed.</i>
<i>Préfix,</i>	<i>préfixe, prefixed.</i>
<i>Roux,</i>	<i>rouisse, reddish.</i>

DECLENSION of NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case : *ex.*

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *Le bon livre*, the good book.
 Gen. Abl. *du bon livre*, of or from, &c.
 Dat. *au bon livre*, to the good book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *Les bons livres*, the good books.
 Gen. Abl. *des bons livres*, of or from, &c.
 Dat. *aux bons livres*, to the good books.

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *La bonne plume*, the good pen.
 Gen. Abl. *de la bonne plume*, of or from, &c.
 Dat. *à la bonne plume*, to the good pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *Les bonnes plumes*, the good pens.
 Gen. Abl. *des bonnes plumes*, of or from, &c.
 Dat. *aux bonnes plumes*, to the good pens.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, must be put in the plural when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if those substantives be of different genders : *ex.*

Le frère, la sœur, le neveu, The brother, sister, ne-
& la nièce, sont tous bons, phew, and niece, are all
good.

Le roi, la reine, le prince, The king, queen, prince,
et la princesse, étoient for- and princess, were ~~gone~~
tis, *out.*

When two or more substantives of different genders are immediately followed by an adjective or participle, the French language requires that adjective or participle

to agree in gender and number with the last substantive; *except* those adjectives or participles implying union or collection, such as *joint*, *uni*, *réuni*, &c. ex.

<i>Il gouverne avec un pouvoir</i>	He governs with an <i>absol-</i>
<i>Et une autorité absolue,</i>	<i>ute</i> power and authority.
<i>Elle laissa le coffre, le cabinet,</i>	She left the trunk, the clo-
<i>Et la chambre, ouverte,</i>	set, and the room, <i>open</i> .
<i>J'ai trouvé les enfans, le</i>	I found the children, father,
<i>père, Et la mère, réunis,</i>	and mother, <i>united</i> .

THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives which may either precede or succeed their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following must be placed before :

<i>Beau,</i> handsome, fine.	<i>Joli,</i> pretty.
<i>Bon,</i> good.	<i>Méchant,</i> } bad.
<i>Brave,</i> brave.	<i>Mauvais,</i> }
<i>Galant,</i> a well-bred man.	<i>Meilleur,</i> better.
<i>Grand,</i> great, tall.	<i>Petit,</i> little, small.
<i>Gros,</i> big, large.	<i>Saint,</i> holy, saint.
<i>Honnête,</i> honest, civil.	<i>Tout,</i> all.
<i>Jeune,</i> young.	<i>Vieux,</i> old.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was speaking) to an old gentleman.—He had a fine hat and a pretty sword.—She deserved a better fate.

un, p.p. dame, f. qui, pro. par-
ing) to an old gentleman.—He had a fine hat
loit, v. gentilhomme, m. Il, pro. avoit, v. chapeau, m.
and a pretty sword.—She deserved a better fate.
Elle, pro. méritoit, v. destin, m.

Your father was a brave general.—I know a young man who has a good horse.—He has²

Votre, pro. étoit, v. général, m. connus, v.
homme, m. a, v. cheval, m.

lent⁴

lent⁴ it² to⁵ an honest⁶ man. — The apostle
prêtre, p. p. *le*, pro. *apôtre*, m.

Paul was a holy man. — My brother has bought
acheté, p. p.
 a good watch. — You have lost all your
montre, f. *avez*, v. *perdu*, p. p.
 money.

Some adjectives have a very different meaning, according as they are placed before or after their substantive; as *une femme sage*, a wise woman; *une sage femme*, a midwife; and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a woman with child, &c. A little practice will remove many apparent difficulties.

Adjectives, expressing names of nations, colour, figure, form, taste, hearing, and touching, those that denote natural qualities, together with those ending in *ile*, *ie*, and *ique*, as also the *participles* when used adjectively, must be placed after their substantives.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULE.

You have an English hat, and she has
Anglois, adj. *chapeau*, m. *elle*, pro. a, v.

a French gown. — He reads an Italian proverb. — I like the German tongue, and a
François, adj. *robe*, f. *Il*, pro. *lit*, v. *Italien*, adj. *pro-*
verbe, m. *aime*, v. *Allemand*, adj. *langue*, f.

Spanish dress. — (It is) a square place.
Espagnol, adj. *habillement*, m. *C'est*, v. *quarré*, adj. *place*, f.

She likes sweet wine. — Your sister has
Elle, pro. *aime*, v. *doux*, adj. *vin*, m. *Votre*, pro. *sœur*, f. a, v.

an harmonious voice. — I have bought a white
harmonieux, adj. *voix*, f. *acheté blanc*, adj.

gown and a black cloak. — You have a faithful
noir, adj. *mantelet*, m. *fidèle*, adj.

servant.

servant. — I eat green peas with
domestique, m. & f. mange, v. verd, adj. pois, m. avec, p.
 boiled mutton. — Bring me a pound and half of
bouilli, p. p. mouton, m. demi, adj.
 cherries and half a pound of currants. — We
cerises, f. groseilles, f. Nous, pro.
 had a kind reception, and we played at a
côtes, v. favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à, p.
 diverting game. — He lives in a
divertissant, adj. jeu, m. Il, pro. demeure, v. dans, p.
 cold country. — You have left the windows
froid, adj. pays, m. laissé, p. p. fenêtre, f.
 and the door open. — Will you have a bit
porte, f. Voulez, v. un morceau, m.
 of roasted chick? — She prefers a
roti, p. p. poulet, m. Elle, pro. préfère, v.
 round table. — Do you² read¹ the³ Punic⁵
rond, adj. table, f. lisez, v. Punique, adj.
 war⁴? — He has made a rash vow.
guerre, f. fait, p. p. téméraire, adj. veu, m.
 Your sister is an agreeable lady. — I like
est, v. agréable, adj. dame, f. aime, v.
 a grey stuff. — (It was) really a tragical
gris, adj. étoffe, f. c'étoit, v. réellement, adj. tragique, adj.
 history.
histoire, f.

When two or more adjectives belong to one sub-
 stantive, the surest way is to place them after it, with
 the conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and, if an ad-
 jective be used in a sentence without a substantive, this
 adjective must always be rendered, in French, by the
 masculine gender.

EXERCISES

EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wife, and boun-
Nous, pro. avons, v. juste, adj. sage, adj. bien-
 tiful, king.—Mr. Brown's daughter
faisant, adj. Monsieur, m. Brun, m. fille, f.
 is with a sincere and generous lady.—
est, v. sincère, adj. généreux, adj.
 I have a scholar of a solid, bright, and
écolier, m. solide, adj. brillant, adj.
 lively, genius.—The wicked shall be punished.
vif, adj. esprit, m. méchant, adj. seront, v. puni, p. p.
 Miss Preston is a young, handsome, and
Mademoiselle, f. est, v.
 well-shaped, lady.—She has married, a so-
bien fait, adj. épouse, p. p. so-
 ber, virtuous, and amiable, man.—The
bre, adj. vertueux, adj. aimable, adj.
 good shall be rewarded.
seront, v. récompensé, p. p.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of more or less in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison :

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive* ; but this is merely an adjective, used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution: ex. *joli*, pretty ; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shews its *equality*, *excess*, or *defect* ; it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, the comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, the comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, the comparative by defect.

The *comparative by equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, or *aussi*, so, before an adjective: ex.

Mon frère est aussi savant My brother is *as* learned as
que vous, you.

Alexandre étoit aussi ambitieux Alexander was *as* ambitious
que César, as Cæsar.

Ma sœur a autant d'argent* My sister has *as much* money
que vous, as you.

The *comparative by excess* is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

Mademoiselle A. est plus savante et plus belle Miss A. is *more* learned
que mademoiselle B. and more handsome than
miss B.

Sa cousine a plus de livres* Her cousin has *more* books
que vous, than you.

The *comparative by defect* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective, or *tant*, so much, or *si*, so, with the negation *ne-pas* or *point* before them: ex.

Votre cousin est moins noble Your cousin is *less* noble
que vous, than you.

Il a moins d'esprit* He has *less* wit than his
que sa sœur, sister.

Mon père n'est pas si riche My father is *not so* rich as
que le vôtre, mais il n'a yours, but he has *not so*
pas tant* d'amour propre, much self-love.

* From the above instances it may be seen that when the adverbs, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, and *tant*, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The pupil will at the same time observe, that, in French as well as in English, the conjunction *que*, as, or than, are always the two terms of the comparison.

N. B. The three following adjectives are comparatives by themselves: *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives:—The *relative*, which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le*, *la*, *les*, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *aux*, precedes the adverbs, *plus*, most; *mieux*, best; *moins*, least; before an adjective; or the adjectives, *meilleur*, best; *moindre*, least; *pire*, worse: ex. *Votre sœur est la plus belle* Your sister is the handsomest (or the most handsome) and the best woman in the town.
et la meilleure femme de la ville,

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs, *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very; *infiniment*, infinitely; precedes an adjective: ex. *Votre oiseau est très, fort, or bien, joli,* Your bird is very pretty.

Dieu est infiniment bon, God is infinitely good.

When any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, *notre*, *votre*, *leur*, &c. they become superlatives: ex.

Vous êtes mon meilleur ami, You are my best friend.

EXERCISES UPON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

You ^a are ³	*not ⁴	so ⁵	dutiful ⁶	as ⁷
êtes, v.	ne-pas, adv.		obéissant, adj.	
your ⁸	brother ⁹ .—	Lucia is handsomer	but	
votre, pro.	frère, m.	Lucie, f. est, v.	mais, c.	
more proud	than her	sister.—I	am	
orgueilleux, adj.		sa, pro. sœur, f.	Je, pro. suis, v.	
as tall	as you.—	My	father is as	rich
haut, adj.	vous, pro.	Mon, pro.	père, m.	riche, adj.
				as

as yours. — His sister is more covetous than he.
le vôtre, pro. Sa, pro. avare, adj. lui, pro.

Nothing is pleasanter to the mind than the light
Rien ne, adv. agréable, adj. esprit, m. lumière, f.

of truth. — She is less polite than her
vérité, f. Elle, pro. est, v. poli, adj. sa, pro.

daughter, but her daughter (is not) so revenge-
fille f. mais, c. n'est pas, v. vindica-

ful as she. — I am your most humble servant.
tif, adj. elle, pro. humble, adj. serviteur, m.

Miss D. (has not) so much wit as her sister,
n'a pas, v. esprit, m.

but she has as much liveliness, and is as amiable
mais, c. vivacité, f.

as she. — The ¹richer⁴ they² are³ the more⁵
riche, adj. ils, pro. sont, v.

covetous⁶ they⁶ are⁷. — My friend has a very
avare, adj. Mon, pro. ami, m. a, v.

beautiful country house. — Nothing is more
beau, adj. campagne, f. maison, f.

lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desi-
aimable, adj. dési-

erable than wisdom. — Paris (is not) so populous
rable, adj. sagesse, f. peuple, adj.

as London. — My best friend is dead. — My
Londres. mort, adj. Ma, pro.

daughter is taller than your son by two inches.
fil, m. de deux

Virtue is the most precious thing in the world. —
précieux, adj. chose, f. du monde, m.

The lion is the strongest and the most courageous
fort, adj. courageux, adj.

of all animals. — (There is) the handsomest lady
animal, m. Voilà, adv.

in London.—She has as much virtue and good *sens*, m.
de as beauty.—Miss P. is the mildest, *politést*, and
doux, adj. *poli*, adj.
 most affable, of all her sisters.—Your brother is
affable, adj. *ses*, pro.
 taller than you by the whole head.—If France
tout, adj. *tête*, f. *Si*, c.
 were as rich as England, (it would be) the best
étoit, v. *ce seroit*, v.
 country in the world.*
pays, m.

O F N U M B E R S.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

<i>Un</i> ,	one.
<i>Deux</i> ,	two.
<i>Trois</i> ,	three.
<i>Quatre</i> ,	four.
<i>Cinq</i> ,	five.
<i>Six</i> ,	six.
<i>Sept</i> ,	seven.
<i>Huit</i> ,	eight.
<i>Neuf</i> ,	nine.
<i>Dix</i> ,	ten.
<i>Onze</i> ,	eleven.
<i>Douze</i> ,	twelve.
<i>Treize</i> ,	thirteen.
<i>Quatorze</i> ,	fourteen.

* It may be observed, in some of these examples, that the preposition *IN*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered, in French, by one of these articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *BY*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only.

Quinze,

<i>Quinze,</i>	fifteen.
<i>Seize,</i>	sixteen.
<i>Dixsept,</i>	seventeen.
<i>Dixhuit,</i>	eighteen.
<i>Dix neuf,</i>	nineteen.
<i>Vingt,</i>	twenty.
<i>Vingt & un,</i>	twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux,</i>	twenty-two.
<i>Vingt-trois, &c.</i>	twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente,</i>	thirty.
<i>Trente & un,</i>	thirty-one.
<i>Trente-deux,</i>	thirty-two.
<i>Quarante,</i>	forty.
<i>Cinquante,</i>	fifty.
<i>Soixante,</i>	sixty.
<i>Soixante & un,</i>	sixty-one.
<i>Soixante & deux, &c.</i>	sixty-two, &c.
<i>Soixante & dix,</i>	seventy.
<i>Soixante & onze, &c.</i>	seventy-one, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt,</i>	eighty.
<i>Quatre-vingt un,</i>	eighty-one.
<i>Quatre-vingt deux, &c.</i>	eighty-two, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt dix, &c.</i>	ninety, &c.
<i>Cent,</i>	a hundred.
<i>Cent un, &c.</i>	a hundred and one, &c.
<i>Deux cens,</i>	two hundred.
<i>Trois cens, &c.</i>	three hundred, &c.
<i>Neuf cens,</i>	nine hundred.
<i>Mille, *mil,</i>	a thousand.
<i>Deux mille,</i>	two thousand.
<i>Trois mille, &c.</i>	three thousand, &c.
<i>Cent mille, &c.</i>	a hundred thousand, &c.
<i>Neuf cens mille,</i>	nine hundred thousand.
<i>Un million,</i>	a million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite, *de*, *à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined: *ex.*

* Mentioning the date of the year, we must write *mil* and not *mille*:
ex. L'an mil sept cens soixante et dix neuf, 1779.

Trois hommes,
Cinquante femmes,

Three men.
Fifty women, &c.

They are invariable in their form, except *vingt*, twenty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million, which takes an *s* in their plural.

It must be observed, that, when the number *un*, one, comes after *vingt*, twenty; *trente*, thirty; *quarante*, forty, &c. the substantive, relating to those two numbers taken together, is put in the singular in French, though in the plural in English: ex.

Vingt et un homme,
Trente et un écu,
Quarante et un jour,

One and twenty men.
One and thirty crowns.
One and forty days, &c.

And, when the noun singular, in French, immediately following the *unit*, is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be put in the plural: ex.

Mon frère a vingt et un an
accomplis,

My brother is full one and
twenty years old.

Voilà trente et une guinée
bien comptées,

There are one and thirty
guineas well told.

However custom will have us say,

Vingt } & un { chevaux.
Trente } volumes.

One and twenty horses. One and thirty volumes

2d. The *ordinal numbers*. This class of numerals, besides the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

Le premier or *unième,*
Le second or *deuxième,*
Le troisième,
Le quatrième,
Le cinquième,
Le sixième,
Le septième,
Le huitième,

the first.
the second.
the third.
the fourth.
the fifth.
the sixth.
the seventh.
the eighth.

<i>Le neuvième,</i>	the ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	the tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	the eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	the twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	the thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	the fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	the fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	the sixteenth.
<i>Le dix septième,</i>	the seventeenth.
<i>Le dix huitième,</i>	the eighteenth.
<i>Le dix neuvième,</i>	the nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	the twentieth.
<i>Le vingt & unième,</i>	the twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt deuxième, &c.</i>	the twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	the thirtieth.
<i>Le trente deuxième, &c.</i>	the thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	the fortieth.
<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	the fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	the sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante & dixième</i>	the seventieth.
<i>Le quatre vingtième,</i>	the eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	the hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	the hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième, &c.</i>	the hundred and second, &c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	the two hundredth.
<i>Le millièm,</i>	the thousandth.

These *ordinal numbers* are declined with the article definite, *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives: ex.

<i>Le premier jour du mois,</i>	The first day of the month.
<i>La cinquième dame,</i>	The fifth lady.

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute number*, in French, though the ordinal be used in English; but we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: ex.

<i>Louis seize,</i>	Lewis the sixteenth.
<i>Henri quatre,</i>	Henry the fourth.

* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième*; for, we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. onze, onzième.*

However,

However, common usage requires us to say,

Henri premier,

Henry the first.

George second,

George the second.

and not *Henri un, George deux.*

RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRECEDING RULES.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration, er-
Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f. er-

ror, and superstition.—The covetous despise the
reur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. méprisent, v.

poor.—Humility is the basis of christian virtues.
pauvre, adj. Humilité, f. base, f. chrétien, adj. vertu, f.

Pride is generally the effect of ignorance.
Orgueil, m. effet, m.

Give me some bread, meat, turnips, and
Donnez, v. moi, pro. navet, m.

water.—Merit and favour are the two springs
Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont, v. source, f.

of envy.—Interest, pleasure, and glory, are the
envie, f. Intérêt, m.

three motives of the actions and conduct of men.
motif, m. conduite, f.

Is² it³ 'not⁴ Peter's book?—Your father
Est, v. ce, pro. ne-pas Votre, pro.

is gone to London.—The father's house and
allé, p. p. maison, f.

the son's garden (are adjoining).—He found
filz, m. jardin, m. se joignent, v. trouva, v.

the windows and the door shut.—Truth is
fermé, p. p. Vérité, f.

the bond of union and the basis of human hap-
lien, m. union, f. humain, adj. bon-

pinefs,

pinefs, without it (there is no) confidence in
heur, m. fans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, m. dans, p.
 friendship, and no security in promises. — The
amitié, f. point, adv. sûreté, f. promesse, f.

love of liberty and independence are the character
amour, m. liberté, f. font, v. caractère, m.

of noble minds. — Iron, steel, and brass
âme, f. Fer, m. acier, m. cuivre, m.

are more useful than gold and silver. —
font, v. utile, adj. or, m. argent, m.

I have seen the inside of the church. —
ai, v. vu, p. p. dedans, m. église, f.

Bring me my powder-box and my toupee-iron.
ma, pro. mon, pro.

I take a lesson three times a week. — Have
prends, v. Ayez, v.

prudence and patience, and you (will have)
vous, pro. aurez, v.

success. — A good conscience is to the soul,
succès, m. conscience, f. âme, f.

what health is to the body. — Merit and
ce que, pro. santé, f. corps, m.

virtue are the only source of true nobility.
unique, adj. véritable, adj. noblesse, f.

Religion, commerce, and arms, are proper
Religion, f. commerce, m. armes, f. propre, adj.

instructions for a young prince. — Her father has
instruction, f. à a, v.

been made a knight of the order of the
été, p. p. fait, p. p. chevalier, m. ordre, m.

Bath. — This cloth is equal to silk.
Bain, m. Ce, pro. drap, m. comparable, adj. soie, f.

I see the coast of England. — A forest twenty
vois, v. côte, f. forêt, f.

miles

miles long and eleven wide. — The example
mille, m. exemple, m.

of a good life is a lesson for the rest of
vie, f. leçon, f. pour, p. reste, m.

mankind. — Lewis the sixteenth is the grandson
genre humain, m. Louis, m. petit fils, m.

of Lewis the fifteenth. — William, surnamed,
Guillaume, m. surnommé, p. p.

the conqueror, king of England and duke of
conquérant, m. duc, m.

Normandy, was one of the greatest generals
Normandie, f. étoit, v. grand, adj. général, m.

of the eleventh century. He (was born) at Falaise,
siècle, m. naquit, v. à, p.

and was the natural son of Robert, duke of
naturel, adj. fils, m.

Normandy and Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. —
foureur, m. fille, f.

Mrs. Nelson's servant knows the price
Madame, f. servante, f. sait, v. prix, m.

of all the provisions. — Thomas was
tout, adj. denrée, f.

formerly a musician, now he is a
autrefois, adv. musicien, adj. à présent, adv.

dancing-master, to-morrow he will be a
danse, f. maitre, m. demain, adv. sera, v.

painter. — This water is very agreeable to
peintre, m. Cette, pro. agréable, adj.

to the smell. — We (are going) to Coxheath
odorat, m. Nous, pro. allons, v.

to see the camp. — Bring us good wine,
voir, v. camp, m. Apportez, v. vin, m.

good beer, and the oil-bottle. — The front
bierre, f. façade, f.

of

of the king's palace (is not) so beautiful as
roi, m. palais, m. n'est pas, v.

thought.—Generosity excites admiration.—
croyois, v. Générosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.

The queen of France is very young.—Charles the
reine, f. • est, v.

second, the son of Philip the fourth, the grand-son
Philippe, petit, adj.

of Philip the third, and the great grand-child of
arrière petit fils

Philip the second, left his kingdom to Philip
laissa, v. son, pro.

the fifth.—The inhabitants of the city of Dublin
habitant, m. ville, f.

have presented a petition to the king.—It
ont, v. présenté, p. p. adresse, f. Elle, pro.

was signed by one and twenty knights and
étoit, v. signé, p. p. par, p.

above two hundred citizens.—Good cider is
plus, adv. citoyen, m. cidre, m.

preferable to bad wine.—He has many
préférable, adj. Il, pro. a, v. bien, adv.

children and plenty of money.—The longer
beaucoup, adv. argent, m. long, adj.

the day is, the shorter is the night.—You
jour, m. court, adj. nuit, f. Vous, pro.

have a fine hat.—Shame is a mixture of the
avez, v. Honte, f. mélange, m.

grief and fear which infamy causes.
chagrin, m. crainte, f. que, pro. infamie, f. cause, v.

Pride and vanity are often the source of the
vanité, f. souvent, adv.

misfortunes of mankind.—We have good
malheur, m. Nous, pro. avons, v.

bread,

bread, excellent meat, and very large * fishes.—
excellent, adj. gros, adj. poisson, m.

(Is there) any beer in the cellar?—Mrs. B.
(Y a-t-il) dans, p. cave, f.

is a good, virtuous, prudent, and generous, lady,
vertueux, adj. dame, f.

she has a daughter as beautiful as an angel.
elle, pro. a, v. ange, m.

Pindarus (was born) at Thebes, a city of Greece.
Pindar, m. naquit, v. à, p. Grèce, f.

The pleasure of the mind is greater than the
plaisir, m. esprit, m.

pleasure of the body; and the diseases of the
corps, m. maladie, f.

mind are more pernicious than the diseases of
font, v. pernicieux, adj.

the body.—Health, honours, and fortune, united
Santé, f. uni, p.p.

together, cannot satisfy the heart of
ensemble, adv. ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v. cœur, m.

man.—Miss W——'s father, a banker in the
banquier, m. dans, p.

Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but she
*Strand, m. * mais, c.*

is prouder and more haughty than if she were
orgueilleux, adj. hautain, adj. étroit, v.

the handsomest woman in Europe. — Hypocrisy is an

homage which vice pays to virtue
hommage, m. que, pro. vice, m. rend, v.

Give me a knife and fork.—My father has
couteau, m. fourchette, f.

bought one and thirty fine grey horses.—(He is)
acheté, p. p. gris, adj. C'est, v.

an intrepid man, and a man of honour and probity.
intrépide, adj. honneur, m. probité, f.

Mr. C.— has the most prudent wife in the town.
*a, v. prudent, adj. **

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom, and
trouva, v. jeunesse, f.

even virtue united in her person. — They
même, adv. reuni, p. p. sa, pro. Ils, pro.

have a quantity of apples and pears. — Vienna,
ont, v. quantité, f. pomme, f. poire, f. Vienne, f.

the capital of the empire of Germany, is a fine city.
Allemagne, f.

The rich, the poor, the young, the old, the learned,
savant, adj.

the ignorant, all are subject to death. — True
ignorant, adj. sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.

friends are as rare as good melons. — Henry
ami, m. font, v. rare, adj. melon, m.

the first, king of England, died the richest prince
mourut, v.

in Europe. — Paul is taller than you by an inch,
** haut, adj. * ponce, m.*

but Mrs. Nichol's brother is the tallest of
mais, c. Madame, f. frère, m.

all.

tout, adj.

* See the remarks on the prepositions EN and BY, in the note, page 36.

S E C T. III.

O F P R O N O U N S.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Les Pronoms personnels,</i> | Pronouns personal. |
| 2. <i>Les Pronoms conjonctifs,</i> | Pronouns conjunctive. |
| 3. <i>Les Pronoms possessifs,</i> | Pronouns possessive. |
| 4. <i>Les Pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative. |
| 5. <i>Les Pronoms relatifs,</i> | Pronouns relative. |
| 6. <i>Les Pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative. |
| 7. <i>Les Pronoms indéfinis,</i> | Pronouns indefinite. |

They have their genders, numbers, and cases.

O F P R O N O U N S P E R S O N A L.

Pronouns personal are those which directly denote the persons and supply the place of them.

There are three persons.

The first is the person that speaks: ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to: ex.

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	Ye speak.

The third is the person spoken of: ex.

<i>Il or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je or moi, I.

Nous, we.

Tu or toi, thou.

Vous, you or ye.

Masculine.

Il or lui, he, it.

Ils or eux, they.

Feminine.

Feminine.

+ *Elle*, she, it. *Elles*, they.

These pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite: ex.

First Person for both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

G. Ab. *de moi*, of or from me. *De nous*, of or from us.

Dat. *à moi*, to me. *à nous*, to us.

Acc. *moi*, me. *nous*, us.

Second Person for both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

G. A. *de toi*, of or from thee. *De vous*, of or from you.

Dat. *à toi*, to thee. *à vous*, to you.

Acc. *toi*, thee. *vous*, you.

Third Person.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Feminine.

G. A. *de lui*, of or from him. *D'elle*, of or from her.*

Dat. *à lui*, to him. *à elle*, to her.

Acc. *lui*, him. *elle*, her.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

G. A. *d'eux*, of or from them. *D'elles*, of or from them.

Dat. *à eux*, to them. *à elles*, to them.

Acc. *eux*, them. *elles*, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, viz.

SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. Gen. Abl. *de soi*, of or from one's self, himself, herself, themselves.

Dat. *à soi*, to one's self, himself, &c.

Acc. *soi*, one's self, himself, &c.

* HER, when standing by itself, is to be rendered by *elle*, *la*, or *lui*; ut, if joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

N. B. Though it has been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they never are employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects; this seldom happens in the first and second persons, but the personal pronouns, *il, elle; ils, elles;* may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate.

2d. The GENERAL AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN, *On*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural: ex. when we say,

On chante, on mange, They sing, they eat;
i. e. some men or women sing, eat.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote in a more especial manner the person spoken of; as

Moi-même,

Myself.

Lui-même,

Himself.

Elle-même,

Herself, &c.

and are declined as above.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRONOUNS, *Je* and *Moi*;
Tu and *Toi*; *Il* and *Lui*; *Ils* and *Eux*.

Je and *Moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case. — *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb, to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to any other pronoun; but *moi* always requires to be followed by one or more pronouns either expressed or understood:
ex.

Qui a pris mon livre?

Who took my book?

C'est moi,

It is I.

That is,

C'est moi qui l'ai pris,

It is I who took it.

Moi must be used instead of *je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief, surprise, &c.* ex.
Moi

Moi lui parler! I speak to him or her!

In short, *moi* must always be used in French as I in English, when it is followed by the pronoun relative, who or whom, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is; *c'étoit*, it was, &c. ex.

Moi qui vous aime, I who love you.

C'est moi qui dois y aller, It is I who am to go there.

And, lastly, *moi* is used whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons or things, in which case it must be immediately followed by *je*: ex.

Monsieur de la Tour commandoit l'infanterie, et moi je commandois la cavalerie, Mr. de la Tour commanded the foot, and I commanded the horse.

In all cases mentioned in this rule, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *eux*, must be used instead of *je*, *tu*, *il*, and *ils*.

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are always joined to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative cases of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive, as in the personal, which are,

For the first Person, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Me, moi*, * me or to me, *Nous*, us or to us, for, *à moi*, or *moi*, for *à nous*, or *nous*.

For the second, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Te, toi*, * thee, or to thee, *Vous*, you, or to you, for, *à toi*, or *toi*, for, *à vous*, or *vous*.

For the third.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Dat. *Lui*, } him, it, or to him, to it,
Acc. *Le*. }

for, *à lui*, or *lui*.

* *Moi* and *toi* must be used instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative.

Feminine.

Dat. *Lui,* } her, it, or to her, to it,
 Acc. *La,* }
 for *à elle,* or *elle.*

PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Dat. *Leur,* } them, to them,
 Acc. *Les,* }
 for *à eux,* m. *à elles,* f. *eux,* m. *elles,* f.
 Dat. or Ac. *Se,* one's self, himself, herself, themselves.
 for *à soi,* or *soi.*

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both genders, viz.

Me, or *moi,* *te,* or *toi,* *nous,* *vous,* *se:* ex.

Vous me parlez, You speak to me.

Il vous croit, He believes you.

Vous me priez de, &c. You desire me to, &c.

In the first example, *me* is in the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi,* to me; in the second, *vous* is in the accusative; &c.

Lui and *leur,* when applied to animated beings, are used in the dative only, and are of both genders: ex.

Je lui parle, I speak to him or to her.

Vous leur écrivez, You write to them.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied either to things animate or inanimate, viz.

Le, mas. him. it; *la,* fem. her, it; and *les,* mas. and fem. them: ex.

Je le vois tous les jours, I see him every day.

Je le sais, I know it.

Nous la connoissons, We know her.

Il les enverra ce soir, He will send them to night.

There are two other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns. They are *en* and *y.*

En always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before; it is rendered in English

English by *of* or *from* him, her, it, them; about him, her, it, &c. with or without him, her, it, &c. at it, &c. for it, &c. upon it, &c. any, none, some, some of, &c. thence, thereof; and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, though it must absolutely be expressed in French: ex.

Nous en parlons,

We speak of him, of her, of it, of them, about him, about her, about it, or about them.

J'en suis fâché,

I am sorry for it.

Donnez-lui en,

Give him some.

Lui en avez-vous porté?

Did you carry her or him any?

Ne lui en envoyez pas,

Send her or him none.

Nous en venons,

We come from it or thence.

In the three last sentences but one, it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it* or *of them* are understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

Y is used for the dative only; it is englished by *to it*, *to them*, *of it*, *in it*, *upon it*, *thither*, *there*, &c. and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French: ex.

Nous n'y pensons plus,

We do not think of it any more.

It is the same with *le*, which, in English, is either not expressed or is rendered by *so*; it is indeclinable in French, and prevents the repetition of one or more words: ex.

Etes-vous riche?

Are you rich?

Non, je ne le suis pas,

No, I-am not.

In this last sentence, *le* is used to avoid the repetition of the word *riche*.

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, and *les*, can never be used after a preposition; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le*, *avec la*, I was with him, with her; but we must use the personal pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *lui*, *elle*, and *eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui*, *avec elle*, &c.

EXERCISES

EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The *pronoun personal* may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction: ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	<i>I speak.</i>
<i>Avons-nous parlé?</i>	<i>Have we spoken, &c.</i>

But the *conjunctive pronouns* are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English: ex.

<i>Il¹ me² parle³,</i>	<i>He¹ speaks³ to me².</i>
<i>Nous¹ le² connoissons³,</i>	<i>We¹ know³ him², &c.</i>

Except in the second person singular and the first and second person plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated affirmatively; in which case they come after the verb: ex.

<i>Apportez-le moi,</i>	<i>Bring it to me.</i>
<i>Envoyons leur y en,</i>	<i>Let us send some to them thither.</i>

But, when two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and, *ou*, or, the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns must precede the last imperative by which it is governed: ex.

<i>Allez le trouver, et lui dites de venir ici.</i>	<i>Go to him, and tell him to come here.</i>
<i>Apportez-le moi, ou me l'envoyez,</i>	<i>Bring it to me, or send it to me.</i>

The verb *fier*, to trust; and *penfer*, or *songer*, to think; require the conjunctive pronouns after them; except only in answering a question or speaking of inanimate things: ex.

<i>Nous nous fions à lui, à eux,</i>	<i>We trust to him, to them.</i>
<i>Pensez vous à elle?</i>	<i>Do you think of her?</i>
<i>Oui, j'y pense,</i>	<i>Yes, I do (think of her.)</i>

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order:

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

Me, m. & f. me or to me,
Te, m. & f. thee or to thee,
Se, m. & f. one's self, him-
 self, herself,

are to be placed before all others; next,

Le, m. him, it,

La, f. her, it,

before

Lui, m. & f. to him, to her. *Leur*, m. & f. to them.

Y, to it, there, thither, &c. *Y*, to them, &c.

And

En, m. & f. of or from him, her, it, &c. *En*, m. & f. of or from them, &c.

the last of all; ex.

Il me le promet, he promised it to me.

Je vous les donnerai, I will give them to you.

Vous les lui enverrez, you will send them to him or her.

Nous le leur fîmes voir, we shewed him to them.

Elle vous y en enverra, she will send some to you thither.

Except, however, from that rule, the pronoun of the first person, *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en*;
 ex.

Apportez y en moi, Bring me some there.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good
acheta, v. *hier*, adv.

book, and¹ after² having⁴ read⁵ it³, he¹ gave⁴
après, p. *avoir*, v. *lu*, p. p. *le* *donna*, v.

it³ to me².—I¹ am³ very⁴ glad⁵ of³ it.
me. *suis*, v. *bien*, adv. *aise*, adj. *en*.

Do 'not³ lend⁴ it² to her³.—She¹ spoke⁴ to
ne-pas, adv. *prêtez*, v. *lui*. *parla*, v. *en*.

him² of it³.—I see her and speak to her (every
lui *vois*, v. *parle*, v. *tous les*

day).—Carry it to her.—I¹ (will⁴ carry)
jours *Portez*, v. *mènerai*, v.

them³

them² thither³ myself⁵. — Do you³ know²
les y en connoissez, v.

them¹? — I¹ will³ write to them² myself⁴. — He⁴
écrirai, v. en leur

will³ not⁴ sell⁷ it⁵ to them⁶, but he will
veut v. ne-pas vendre, v. en mais, c.

give it to you. — If¹ they² ask⁴ you³ a⁵
donner, v. Si, c. demandent, v.

favour⁶, will³ you⁴ refuse³ it¹ (to) them²?
grace, f. refuserez, v.

He¹ has³ taken⁴ it² away⁴ with⁵ him⁶. — I
a, v. emporté, p. p. avec, p.

find him more reasonable than his sister.
trouve, v. raisonnable, adj. sa, pro.

Talk³ no¹ more⁴ of it². — I¹ thank⁴ you² for
Parlez, v. ne plus, adv. remercie, v.

it³. — Why¹ do you⁵ give⁴ it² to her³? — Had⁴
en. Pourquoi, adv. en donnez, v. Aviez, v.

you⁵ not⁶ promised⁷ it² to him³? — Do you⁴
ne-pas promis, p. p. en

not⁵ see³ the⁶ beauty of² it? — I¹ never⁵
voyez, v. beauté, f. ne-jamais, adv.

will⁴ consent to³ it. — They are sorry for
consentirai, v. y- sont, v. fâché, adj.

it. — You¹ may² tell⁵ it³ to her⁴, but do not
pouvez, v. dire, v. en

tell it to her brother. — Since you (have no)
dites, v. son, pro. Puisque, c. n'avez point, v.

pears in your garden, I (will send) you
poire, f. dans, p. votre, pro. jardin, m. enverrai, v.

some. — They¹ have⁴ stolen⁵ from us² the⁶ great-
en ont, v. volé, p. p. en

est⁷ part⁸ of³ them. — Believe me, go¹ and
partie, f. Croyez, v. allez, v. en

spea³

of³ it.—Do not give it to him, give it to me.
y donnez, v.
 Send some to them thither.

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor, as in English) in gender, number, and case. They are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.
<i>Mon, *</i>	<i>Ma,</i>	<i>Mes, my.</i>
<i>Ton, *</i>	<i>Ta,</i>	<i>Tes, thy.</i>
<i>Son, *</i>	<i>Sa,</i>	<i>Ses, his, her, or its.</i>

Both Genders.

<i>Notre.</i>	<i>Nos, our.</i>
<i>Votre.</i>	<i>Vos, your.</i>
<i>Leur.</i>	<i>Leurs, their.</i>

They are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à; ex.*

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>mon père, my father.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>de mon père, of or from my father.</i>
Dat.	<i>à mon père, to my father.</i>

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ma mère, my mother.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ma mère, of or from my mother.</i>
Dat.	<i>à ma mère, to my mother.</i>

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>mes frères, my brothers.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>de mes frères, of or from my brothers.</i>
Dat.	<i>à mes frères, to my brothers.</i>

* *Mon, ton, son*, must be used before a noun feminine, beginning with a vowel.

Feminine.

Mon amable Anna

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>mes sœurs</i> , my sisters.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de mes sœurs</i> , of or from my sisters.
Dat.	<i>à mes sœurs</i> , to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding,

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though not expressed in English: ex.

J'ai perdu mon chapeau et mes gands, I have lost my hat and gloves.

When these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition, *IN*, and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine the possession: ex.

J'ai mal aux yeux, I have a pain in my eyes,
and not *dans mes yeux*.
Il se cassa le bras, He broke his arm.

This will be seen among the idiomatical expressions.

ITS, THEIR, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object, referred to, is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses*, &c. but by *EN*: ex.

<i>Windfor est un beau village,</i>	Windfor is a fine village,
<i>j'en admire la situation,</i>	I admire <i>its</i> situation,
<i>les promenades, &c.</i>	walks, &c.
<i>Cette maison est très bien</i>	This house is well situated,
<i>située, mais l'architecture</i>	but <i>its</i> architecture does
<i>ne m'en plaît pas,</i>	not please me.

The *RELATIVE* are never joined to any substantive; for, the substantive, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

G

SING.

Un beau genre

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
	Masc.		Fem.
<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i> mine.
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i> thine.
<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i> his or hers.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i> ours.
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i> yours.
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i> theirs.

They are declined with the article definite: ex.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.		Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i>	of or from mine.
Dat.	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i>	to mine.

PLURAL.

	Masc.		Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i>	mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes,</i>	of or from mine.
Dat.	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes,</i>	to mine.

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying to belong to, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative: ex.

<i>Ce livre est à moi,</i>	This book is <i>mine</i> .
<i>Cette épée est à lui, et non pas à vous,</i>	This sword is <i>his</i> , and not <i>yours</i> .

Also, when it is joined to a noun substantive in English, it ought to be rendered in French by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive put in the genitive plural: ex.

Un de mes, de vos, amis, A friend of mine, of yours.
i. e. one of my or your friends.

OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the person or things to which they are applied. They are,

SINGULAR.

Ces armes sont à leur

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ce, Cet,*</i>	<i>cette,</i> this that.
<i>Celui,</i> he that.	<i>celle,</i> she that.
<i>Celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci,</i> this.
<i>Celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là,</i> that.

PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ces,</i>	<i>ces,</i> these, those.
<i>Ceux,</i>	<i>celles,</i> they, these, those.
<i>Ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci,</i> these.
<i>Ceux-là,</i>	<i>celles-là,</i> those.
<i>Ce qui,</i> <i>ce que,</i> what.	
<i>Ceci,</i> this, <i>cela,</i> that.†	

These two last are always of the masculine gender, and of the singular number.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à*: ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ce livre,</i> this or that book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ce livre,</i> of or from this book.
Dat.	<i>à ce livre,</i> to this book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ces livres,</i> these books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ces livres,</i> of or from these books.
Dat.	<i>à ces livres,</i> to these books.*

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>cette plume,</i> this or that pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de cette plume,</i> of or from this pen.
Dat.	<i>à cette plume,</i> to this pen.

* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute: ex. *CET oiseau,* this bird.

† The word *THAT*, whether expressed or understood, when it comes between two verbs, and is followed by a noun or pronoun, must be rendered in French by *QUE*, which must be placed immediately after the first verb: ex.

Je sais QUE votre frère est marié, I know *that* your brother is married, &c.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ces plumes</i> , these pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ces plumes</i> , of or from these pens.
Dat.	<i>à ces plumes</i> , to these pens.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom Acc.	<i>celui</i> , he, him, that.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de celui</i> , of or from him.
Dat.	<i>à celui</i> , to him.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>celle</i> , she, her, that.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de celle</i> , of or from her.
Dat.	<i>à celle</i> , to her.

PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
N. Acc.	<i>ceux</i> , <i>celles</i> , they, them, those, such as.
G. Abl.	<i>de ceux</i> , <i>de celles</i> , of or from those.
Dat.	<i>à ceux</i> , <i>à celles</i> , to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom, or that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying any person, one, or any body, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.* ex.

Celui qui pratique la vertu *He who practises virtue*
vit heureux, *lives happy.*

Celle, que vous vîtes chez *She, whom, or that, you*
mon frère, n'est pas mariée, *saw at my brother's, is*
not married.

Vous punissez celui ou celle *You punish him or her*
qui n'est pas coupable, *who is not guilty.*

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who*: ex.

Ceux qui méprisent la science *Such as despise learning do*
n'en connoissent pas le prix, *not know its value.*

Ce, cette, ces, this, that, these, those, must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for, the noun, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

J'ai vu le portrait du père I have seen the father's
et celui du fils, picture and *that* of the son.

Cette montre n'est pas à vous, This watch is not yours, it
c'est celle de ma mère, is *that* of my mother, &c.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English and supplied by an apostrophe and an *s* at the end of the noun substantive, but must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui, celle, &c.* according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

Il a pris mon chapeau et He has taken my hat and
celui de mon père, my father's.

Vous avez déchiré ma robe You have torn my gown
et celle de ma sœur, and my sister's.

Sometimes the particles *ci, là*, here, there, are also joined to the pronouns *ce, cette, ces*, to distinguish, with more precision, the objects to which they are applied: ex.

Ce chapeau-ci, This hat.

Cette ville-là, That town, &c.

The two following expressions, *the former, the latter*, referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are elegantly made into French by *celui-ci, celui-là, &c.* and agree with the noun.

Celui-ci, celle-ci, this, applies to the nearest object.

Celui-là, celle-là, that, to that which is more remote.

Ce qui, ce que, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it always can be turned by *that which*, or *the thing which*: ex.

Je vous dirai ce qui lui est arrivé, I will tell you *what* has happened to him ;
that is, *that which*, or *the thing which*, has happened to him.

Savez-vous ce que je lui dis ? Do you know *what* I told him ? &c.

Ceci, this, *cela*, that, are only used when speaking of things; the word *thing* being always understood ; ex.

Ceci me plait, *This* pleases me ;

that is ; *this thing* pleases me.

Cela me fait peur, *That* frightens me ;

that is, *that thing* frightens me, &c.

EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

Give me my book. — I have met your
Donnez, v. livre, m. ai, v. rencontré, p. p.

sister with a friend of yours. — She had lost
sœur, f. avec, p. ami, m. avoit, v. perdu, p. p.

her gloves and fan. — Have you found your
gand, m. évantail, m. Avez, v. trouvé, p. p.

pen ? — His daughter is older than mine,
plume, f. fille, f. est, v. vieux, adj.

but her son (is not) so tall as yours. — My
mais, c. fils, m. n'est pas, v. grand, adj.

mother has (a pain) in her head. — Bring me
mère, f. a, v. mal, m. tête, f. Apportez, v.

that dictionary. — I have found my hat and my bro-
dictionnaire, m.

ther's. — Men commonly hate him whom
ordinairement, adv. haïssent, v. que, pro.

they fear. — Learn this lesson, it is not so diffi-
craignent, v. Apprenez, v. leçon, f. diffi-

cult as that. — Take care of that child. —
cile, adj. Prenez, v. soin, m. enfant, m.

Her

Her brother says he will not refuse you what
dit, v. ne-pas refusera, v.

you ask of him. — My ambition is the only
demandez, v. ambition, f. seul, adj.

cause of his imprudence. — Your house is more con-
cause, f. imprudence, f. com-

venient than hers, but it is not so well situated. —
mode, adj. situé, adj.

She, whom you hate, is my best friend. — You have
haïssez, v. amie, f.

punished him who did not deserve it, and rewarded
puni, p. p. méritoit, v. récompensé, p. p.

her who was guilty. — I have seen your father, mo-
ai, v. vu, p. p.

ther, brothers, and sisters. — She, who dines with
qui, pro. dine, v. avec, p.

us, is my brother's wife. — Her affection for me
femme, f. affection, f. pour, p.

is false. — I hope you will come soon to
faux, adj. espère, v. viendrez, v. bientôt, adv.

see us. — His coach is beautiful, I admire its
voir, v. carrosse, m.

painting and ornaments. — Such¹ as² seem³
peinture, f. ornement, m. qui, pro. paroissent, v.

to⁴ be happy⁵ are⁶ 'not⁹ always¹⁰ so⁷. — Your
être, v. heureux, adj. sont, v. toujours, adv.

horses are better than theirs. — They stole my
cheval, m. volèrent, v.

watch and my mother's. — Tell her my sister will
montre, f. Dites, v. sera, v.

be glad to see her. — She has a pain in her
bien-aise, adj. de voir, v. a, v.

teeth. — (It is not) my hat, it is hers, but this is
dent, f. Ce n'est pas, v. c'est, v.

better

better than that. — We ought to pray for them that
devons, v. prier, v. pour, p.

persecute us. — Of all virtues, that which most
persécutent, v. le plus, adv.

distinguishes a Christian is charity. — These candles
distingue, v. chandelle, f.

are better than those. — This fan is mine and not
sont, v. non pas

yours. — Give me this and take that. — This book
prenez, v.

and that I lent you are the two best. — Tell me
ai prêté, v. Dites, v.

what vexes you. — I have seen the king's palace, and
fâche, v. palais, m.

that of the queen.
reine, f.

OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse either expressed or implied. They are declined as follow :

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui,</i> or <i>dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.

* **WHOSE**, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*.

† **Qui**, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions: ex.

Avec qui, With whom.

Pour qui, For whom.

Or, when it signifies *what person*: ex.

Aenez qui vous voudrez,

Bring whom you please;

that is, what person you please.

Acc.

Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i> of or, &c.
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i> to which.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles,</i> of or, &c.
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles,</i> to which.

The noun or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number: ex.

Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp, I know a man who is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée, I have read the letter (that) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said *laquelle lettre?* which letter? &c. — The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes elegantly understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French: ex

La dame, que vous connoissez, est arrivée, The lady, you know, is arrived;
whom is understood in the English.

When the words *to which*, *to what*, *at which*, *at what*, *in which*, *in what*, have a reference to inanimate things, and when they can be expressed by *where*, *whereto*, *whereat*, or *wherein*, they are to be rendered in French by the adverb of place, *où*: ex.

Je vous montrerai la maison où il demeure, I will shew you the house in which he lives;
that is, where he lives.

Voici

Voici la porte par où nous entrâmes, This is the door *through which* we went in.

Quoi, what, is never used in the nominative case: in the other cases it is generally used in an indeterminate sense, and is never expressed but in speaking of inanimate things: ex.

En quoi se trompe-t-il ? In *what* does he mistake?

When we speak of irrational beings, or inanimate things, in the genitive, dative, or ablative, cases, we make use of *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui*: ex.

Le cheval, auquel vous donnez à boire, The horse, *to which* you give some drink.

As also after a preposition: ex.

La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez, The window upon *which* you lean.

And when *who*, *whom*, or *which*, refers to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed: ex.

Apportez moi lequel vous voudrez, Bring me *which* you please.

OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

These are called *interrogative* because they are only used in asking questions, and have no antecedent: they are declined with the article indefinite.

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom. Acc.	<i>qui</i> ,	who, whom.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de qui</i> ,	of or from whom.
Dat.	<i>à qui</i> ,	to whom, whose.

Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what.*

Or, *qu'est ce qui*, *qu'est ce que*.

Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi</i> ,	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi</i> ,	to what.

* N. B. When *WHAT*, in English, signifies how much, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Femimine.

N. A.	<i>quel, or lequel,</i>	<i>quelle, or laquelle,</i>	what, which.
G. A.	<i>de quel, &c.</i>	<i>de quelle, &c.</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quel, &c.</i>	<i>à quelle, &c.</i>	to what, which.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. A.	<i>quels, or lesquels,</i>	<i>quelles, or lesquelles,</i>	what, which.
G. A.	<i>de quels, &c.</i>	<i>de quelles, &c.</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quels, &c.</i>	<i>à quelles, &c.</i>	to what, which.

Qui, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons and never to things, and it may be expressed by *quelle personne?* what person? ex.

*Qui est là?**Who is there?**Qui cherchez vous?**Whom do you seek?*

Quoi and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose?* what thing? ex.

Que voulez-vous, or, qu'est- *What do you want?**ce que vous voulez?**De quoi parlez-vous?* *What are you speaking of?*

N. B. According to the French idiom *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que*: ex.

Que dites-vous, or, qu'est- *What do you say?**ce que vous dites?*

Quel, quelle, what, are always joined to some substantive with which they must agree in gender and number: ex.

Quel livre traduisez-vous? *What book do you translate?**Quelle heure est-il?* *What hour is it?*

But, to avoid repetition, *lequel, laquelle*, which, are elegantly used as substitutes for *quel* or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always

always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Une de mes sœurs est mariée,</i>	One of my sisters is married.
<i>Laquelle est-ce ? that is, laquelle de vos sœurs est-ce ?</i>	<i>Which is it ? that is, which of your sisters is it ?</i>
<i>Je parle d'un de vos amis,</i>	I am speaking of one of your friends.
<i>Duquel parlez-vous ? that is, duquel de mes amis parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>Of which are you speaking ? that is, of which of my friends are you speaking ?</i>

OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite*, or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive ; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

<i>Aucun, aucune,</i>	None, no one, not one, not any.
<i>Autre,</i>	Other, any other.
<i>Autrui,</i>	Other, other people.
<i>Chacun, chacune,</i>	Each, every one, every body.
<i>Chaque,</i>	Every, each.
<i>L'un, l'autre,</i>	One another, each other.
<i>Les uns — les autres,</i>	Some — others.
<i>L'un et l'autre,</i>	Some — some.
<i>L'un ou l'autre,</i>	Both.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	Either.
<i>Nul, nulle,</i>	Neither.
<i>Pas un, pas une,</i>	None.
<i>Personne,</i>	No one, not one.
<i>La plupart de, des,</i>	Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.
	Most.
	<i>Plusieurs,</i>

Plusieurs,
Quelconque,
Quelque,
Quelque chose,
Quelque — que,
Quel — que,
Quelle — que,
Quelque chose, qui, or que,
Quoique,
Quoique ce soit que,
Tout ce qui, or que,
Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,

Quiconque,
Qui que ce soit, or fût,

Quoique ce soit, or fût,

Rien,
Tel, telle,
Tel qui,
Telle qui,
Tout,
Tout le monde,
Tout — que,

Many, several.
 Whatever.
 Some, any.
 Something, any thing.
 Whosoever, whatsoever,
 whatever, however, how-
 soever, though, &c.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, some-
body, any.

Whatsoever, any body.

Whosoever, nobody in the
world, nobody at all,
any body whatever, no
man living, let him be
who he will, be he who
he may, &c.

Whatsoever, nothing in
the world, nothing what-
ever.

Nothing, any thing.

Such one, such.

Such as, he, she, they,
who, that, &c.

Every, every thing.

Every body, any body.

As — as, for all, al-
though, however, &c.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE ABOVE PRONOUNS.

Aucun, aucune, is never used but in the singular, and always negatively, it relates to a person or thing mentioned before : ex.

Aucun ne s'est encore avisé No one has yet taken into
de vous contredire, his head to contradict
 you.

H

Aucune

Aucune n'a porté la con- *Not one* has carried con-
stance si loin, stancy so far.

In some sentences expressing a doubt, *aucun* is used without a negation : ex.

Y a-t-il aucun, ou aucune, Is there *any* of you who
de vous qui le souffrit? would suffer it?

Autrui, has neither gender nor number, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case, always referring to persons : ex.

Ne faites point à autrui ce Do not do unto *others* what
que vous ne voudriez pas you would not wish to
qu'on vous fit, be done unto.

Chacun, chacune, may be used in a general or limited sense, mentioning persons or things : ex.

Chacun à son tour, Every one in his turn.
Les arbres portent leurs fruits Trees bear their fruits *each*
chacun dans leur saison, in their season.

L'un l'autre express a reciprocity in the action and may be applied to persons or things : ex.

Ils se jettent des pierres l'un They throw stones to *each*
à l'autre, other.
Le feu et l'eau se détruisent Fire and water destroy *one*
l'un l'autre, another.

L'un et l'autre always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things : ex.

L'un et l'autre ont raison, Both are in the right.
L'un et l'autre servent au Both serve to the same pur-
même usage, pose.

Observe that *both* is not to be expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and* : ex.

Son frère et sa sœur sont Both his brother and sister
morts, are dead.

Ni l'un ni l'autre require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb as its nominative, and in the plural, if it come after it; in both cases, the verb must be preceded by a negation: ex.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne m'a répondu, or, ils ne m'ont répondu ni l'un ni l'autre, *Neither of them have answered me.*

Nul, pas un, are always accompanied with a negation and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: ex.

Nul ne peut se flatter d'être agréable à Dieu, *No one can flatter himself to be agreeable to God.*
Pas un ne le croit, *Not one believes it.*

Personne is likewise attended with a negation, *except* in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

Personne ne peut se vanter d'être sans défaut, *Nobody can boast of being without a defect.*

Ne parlez à personne, *Speak to nobody, or, do not speak to anybody.*

Personne s'est-il jamais exprimé avec plus de grace que Shéridan? *Did ever any body express himself with more grace than Sheridan?*

Quelque always expresses an indeterminate signification and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number: ex.

Quelque auteur, *Some author.*
Quelques philosophes, *Some philosophers.*

Quelque — que. *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que* expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quelques efforts que l'on fasse pour voiler la vérité, *Whatever efforts people make to hide truth, it is*

tê, elle se découvre tôt ou tard,

Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera si vous repentez sincèrement,

Quelque equitables que soient vos offres, je doute qu'on les accepte,

Quelque puissans que soient les rois, ils meurent comme le plus vil de leurs sujets,

discovered one time or other.

Whatever faults you may have committed, you will be forgiven if you sincerely repent.

However equitable your offers be, I doubt of their being accepted.

Though kings be ever so powerful, they die as well as the meanest of their subjects.

Quel que, quelle que, must be thus divided when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quel que soit l'ennemi dont vous appréhendez la malice, vous devez vous reposer sur votre innocence,

Les loix condamnent tous les criminels, quels qu'ils puissent être,

Quelles que soient vos intentions, &c.

Whatever the enemy be whose malice you dread, you ought to rest on your innocence.

Laws condemn all criminals, whoever they may be.

Whatever your intentions may be, &c.

Quelque chose qui or *que, quoique, quoique ce soit que, tout ce qui* or *que,* always relate to things and never to persons; with this difference, that in French we generally begin the sentence with either *quelque chose que* or *qui, quoique,* or *quoique ce soit que,* with the following verb in the subjunctive mood; on the contrary we always make use of *tout ce qui* or *que,* when *whatever* can be turned by *all that which* or *every thing which,* and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with the following verb in the indicative mood: ex.

Quelque

Quelque chose qu'on vous dise, or quoique ce soit qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas,	<i>Whatever</i> may be said to you, do not believe it.
A quelque chose que, or à quoique ce soit que, vous vous appliquez,	To <i>whatever</i> you apply yourself.
Je ferai tout ce qu'il vous plaira,	I will do <i>whatever</i> , or <i>e- very thing</i> , you please.
Tout ce qui est agréable n'est pas toujours utile,	<i>Whatever</i> , or <i>all that which</i> , is pleasing is not always useful.

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une, relates to persons or things
and makes *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural.

Quiconque is indeclinable and always used in the sin-
gular: ex.

Il a ordre d'arrêter qui- conque passera par là,	He is ordered to stop <i>whom- soever</i> , or <i>any body that</i> , goes that way.
---	---

Qui que ce soit, speaking of persons only, may be
englished different ways; but, when by *whosoever*,
what person soever, it must always be followed by the
pronouns *il, elle*, or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless
it be governed by a verb or a preposition: ex.

Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni,	<i>Whosoever</i> deceives me shall be punished.
Qui que ce soit qui vous parle de cette affaire, fei- gnez de n'en rien savoir.	<i>Whosoever</i> speaks to you about that affair, pre- tend not to know any thing about it.

When the above pronoun is englished by *nobody in the
world, no man living*, &c. it must be attended with the
negation *ne* before the verb: ex.

Je n'en ai parlé à qui que ce soit,	I mentioned it to <i>nobody whatever</i> , or to <i>no man living</i> .
--	---

When speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used: ex.

César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût, Cæsar would trust to nobody whatever.

Il ne fit part de ses projets à qui que ce fût, He acquainted nobody in the world with his projects.

The above observation is to be made with respect to *quoique ce soit*, *quoique ce fût*, only used in speaking of inanimate objects.

Tout — que. *Tout* preceding a noun immediately followed by *que* is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine before nouns beginning with a consonant: ex.

Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois, As learned as he is, or, for all he is learned, he sometimes mistakes.

Toute laide qu'est cette demoiselle, elle se fait des amis par-tout, This young lady, as ugly as she is, or, for all she is ugly, gets friends every where.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite and indeterminate manner.

<i>Je ne sais qui,</i>	I know not who.
<i>Je ne sais quoi,</i>	I know not what.
<i>Je ne sais quel,</i>	I know not which or what.

Je ne sais qui is only said speaking of persons, and signifies a person we do not know: ex.

Il parle à je ne sais qui, He speaks I know not to whom.

Elle fut abordée par je ne sais qui, She was accosted by I know not whom.

Je ne sais quoi is only said of things and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named nor defined: ex.

Il se plaint de je ne fais He complains of I know
quoi, not what.

We sometimes put *un* before *je ne fais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *je ne fais quoi* : ex.

Il parle d'un je ne fais qui, He speaks of I know not
whom.

Elle s'est adressée à un je ne fais qui, She addressed herself to I
know not whom.

Il y a là dedans un je ne fais quoi qui me plaît, There is in that I know
not what that pleases me.

J'ai lu une comédie intitulée Le je ne fais quoi, I have read a play which
has for title I know not what.

Je ne fais quel; in this last expression, *quel* takes the form of an adjective and must always be accompanied with a substantive; it is said speaking both of persons and things : ex.

Lorsque j'entrai, je vis je ne fais quel homme, quelle femme, quel tableau, quelle figure, When I went in, I saw
I know not what man, what woman, what picture, what figure.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The man who sold me these pens is very cunning. — *a vendu, v. ru-*

ning. — The lady of whom you speak (is not) *fé, adj. dame, f. parlez, v. n'est pas, v.*

handsome. — Other people's opinions are not the *sentiment, m.*

rule of mine. — Miss D——, whom you love *règle, f. aimez, v.*

so much, is very ill. — The table, upon which *tant, adv. malade, adj. table, f. sur, p.*

you write, is broken. — Who told it to you? — *écrivez, v. cassé, p. p. a dit, v. en*

He,

He, who was with you, related to me how
était, v. a raconté, v. comment, adv.

every thing had passed. — She (will not)
s'était, v. passé, p. p. ne veut pas, v.

hear of the misery to which he is reduced. —
entendre parler, v. misère, f. réduit, p. p.

He (keeps company with) I know not whom, and that
fréquente, v.

displeases her. — No one is free from fault. —
déplait, v. exempt, adj. défaut, m.

What¹ are² you³ doing²? — Have you heard any
faites, v. appris, p. p.

news? — Shun vice, and love what is good. —
nouvelle, f. Évitez, v. vice, m. aimez, v. bon, adj.

Every one acts for himself. — Who was with
agit, v. pour, p. était, v. avec, p.

you? — It¹ was² a³ gentleman⁴ whose⁵ name¹⁰ I¹ know³
Ce monsieur, m. nom, m. fais, v.

⁷not⁹. — Somebody knocks at the door, go and
ne-pas. frappe, v. à, p. allez, v. en

open it. — Men¹ generally³ hate² him⁴
ouvrir, v. Homme, m. généralement, adv. haïssent, v.

whom⁵ they⁶ fear⁷. — (Here are) two pears, which
craignent, v. Voici, adv. prie, f.

will you have? — The man I sent you was
voulez, v. ai envoyé, v.

honest. — Both religion and virtue are the bonds of
honnête, adj. lien, m.

civil society. — Is that the horse for which you gave
société, f. avez donné, v.

a hundred guineas? — Whatever¹ these³ books⁴ be²,
soient, v.

send them to me. — Whose¹ sword⁴ is² this³? — It be-
appartient, f. ap-

longs

• I know not what mean in that behaviour. — I love
bas, adj. conduite, f. aime, v.
 neither of them. — Both are married. — From' whom?
sont, v.
 do you^s know^t it³? — He was so honest that he mis-
savez, v. étoit, v. dé-
 trusted nobody at all. — (For' all³) they⁴ are⁵ rich²,
fioit, v. Tout que riche, adj.
 they¹ give³ ²nothing⁴ to the poor⁵. — They¹
donnent, v. ne-rien, adv.
 do² justice³ to' one⁴ another⁶.
se rendent, v.

RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRONOUNS.

I speak French. — You speak English. — We³
parle, v. parlez, v.
 do ²not⁴ understand³ what⁵ they⁶ say⁸ to us⁷. —
ne-pas comprenons, v. disent, v. s.
 She¹ speaks³ to you² and⁴ robs⁶ you⁵ (at the same⁷
parle, v. s. vole, v. en même
 time.) — We¹ have⁴ ²not⁵ seen⁶ them³. — Your
tems, adv. avons, v. vus, p. p.
 mother came (to see) me yesterday, and I (will go) to
mère, f. vint, v. voir, v. hier, adv. irai, v.
 see her (to-morrow.) — Is there any body that esteems
demain, adv. Est-il, v. estime, v.
 her more than I do? — They¹ are² happy³, but⁴
sont, v. heureux, adj. mais, c.
 we⁵ are⁸ ⁶not⁹ so⁷. — Whatever may be your
sommes, v. soient, v.
 troubles, you ought to write to me more frequently. —
peine, f. devriez, v. écrire, v. souvent, adv.

I (will lend) you the book she sent me. — Be-
prêterai, v. a envoyé, v. Cro-

lieve me, he is very ill. — I shall be very glad
yez, v. malade, adj. serai, v. aise, adj.

to go there with you, for I have something to
de aller, v. avec, p. car, c. à

tell him. — I love your sister, and I owe her re-
dire, v. aime, y. dois, v. re-

spect. — Give me my hat and cloak. — I
spect, m. Donnez, v. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.

have dined with your father and mother. — They²
diné, p. p.

often⁴ procure³ me² that⁵ pleasure⁶. — They
souvent, adv. procurent, v. plaisir, m.

have sent you good apples. — Write to me,
ont, v. envoyé, p. p. Ecrivez, v. ✍

do 'not⁴ write³ to her². — Carry some to your sister.
✍ Portez, v. sœur, f.

— I will do whatever you please. — London is the
ferai, v. plaira, v.

capital of England, as Paris is that of France.
capital, adj. comme, adv.

— Brest is a fine sea-port, in France, but its
mer, f. port, m. en, p. mais, c.

entrance is difficult and dangerous. — These books
entrée, f. dangereux, adj.

are mine, and not yours. — Your exercise is
sont, v. non pas, adv. thème, m.

better than mine, but it is not so well as your bro-
bien, adv.

ther's. — Do you² think¹ of³ me⁴? — Yes, I
✍ pensez, v. à Oui, adv.

do. — You do not know what vexes me. — I
pense, v. ✍ savez, v.

will

will not accept of any of the terms which they
veux, v. accepter, v. condition, f.

offer me. — Whom ought we to worship? —
offrent, v. devons, v. adorer, v.

God, who is a father to them that love him, and
Dieu, m. le de aiment, v.

a protector to those that fear him. — Those trees
protecteur, m. craignent, v. arbre, m.

are well exposed to the sun, yet their
exposé, p. p. soleil, m. cependant, adv.

fruits are not good. — I believe your uncle is arri-
crois, v. oncle, m. arri-

ved. — His ability is not so great as yours. — Two
vé, p. p. habileté, f. grand, adj.

rivals are generally enemies of one another. — Who
rival, m.

gave you that letter? — Your brother's servant. —
a donné, v. lettre, f. domestique, m.

What¹ does he⁴ write³ to you²? — That his library
écrit, v. bibliothèque, f.

is at our service. — His letters please me so much
à service, m. plaisent, v.

that I wish to increase their number. — He that
veux, v. augmenter, v.

wants virtue, wants (all things.) — That lady
manque de, v. vertu, f. tout, m. dame, f.

pleases you, for¹ you² are⁴ always⁵ speaking⁴ of³ her.
plait, v. car, c. toujours, adv. parlez, v.

— The beauty of the mind creates admiration; that
beauté, f. esprit, m. donne, v.

of the soul gains esteem; and that of the body,
âme, f. donne, v. estime, f. corps, m.

love. — Most friends are more attached to our for-
amour, m. attaché, p. p.

tane than they are (so) to our person. — It is
que — ne, c. Ce

she who told me that this house (is not) yours. —
a dit, v. maison, f. n'est pas, v.

Whatever her intention may be, I do not love her³
fait, v. aime, v.

the⁷ less for⁴ it. — Nobody in the world has complained
mains, adv. est, v. plaint, p. p.

of your conduct. — When you read the history of
Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f.

the Roman emperors, you will find one (of them)
Romain, adj. empereur, m. trouverez, v.

whose name was Nero. — The study of geography is
géographie, f.

absolutely necessary to him who has a taste for
absolument, adv. du goût, m.

history. — He¹ that² sold⁴ us³ this⁵ clock⁶ did⁹
a vendu, v. horloge, f. a, v.

not¹⁰ cheat¹¹ us⁸. — What do you think of it?
ne-pas trompé, p. p. pensez, v.

— Whosoever¹ cheats³ me² shall⁴ repent⁶ (of⁵
trompe, v. se repentira, v.

it). — Every body thinks we (shall have) peace. —
croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.

England owes her riches to her naval strength and
doit, v. forces, f. pl.

the encouragement she gives to her commerce. —
donne, v.

We speak of what has happened to him. — My
parlons, v. est, v. arrivé, p. p. &

house is like others, it has its beauties as well
maison, f. comme, adv. autre, a, v. beauté, f.

as its inconveniences. — She, who (was speaking) to
incommodité, f. parloit, v. &

you, is not yet married. — Do you know any
encore, adv. marié, p. p. & connoissez, v.

of these ladies? — Yes, I know some of them. —
Oui, adv. connois, v.

For¹ all they^s are⁶ young² and³ handsome⁴, they have
ont, v.

a great deal of modesty and virtue. — Desire him to
Priez, v. de

bring them here. — Is that the gown for which
amener, v. ici, adv. Est, v. robe, f. pour, p.

you gave five guineas? — There is I know not
avez donné, v. guinée, f. Il y a, v.

what in the colour which pleases much. — To
dans, p. plait, v. beaucoup, adv.

what (does he apply himself)? — This apple and that
s'applique-t-il?

he gave you are very good. — Give me either of
donna, v. Do, vez, v. &

them. — I¹ will^s send you² some⁴ thither³. — I can-
enverrai, v. ne peux

not sell it to you for so small a sum. — I pre-
pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p. somme, f. pré-

fer the beauty of the mind to that of the body. —
fère, v.

Some love one thing, some another. — She says she
aiment, v. dit, v.

hates that man, many think she loves him. —
hait, v. croyent, v. aime, v.

He, whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than
plait, v. malheureux, adj.

he who pleases nobody. — I was near your sister
étois, v. auprès de, p.

when that happened to her. — Both his father and
quand, c. arriva, v.

mother

mother died on the same day. — As covetous as
moururent, v. ∞ avaré, adj.

he is, he gave me one guinea. — Whatever has
a donné, v. soit, v.

happened to you, I am sorry for it. — He would
arrivé, p. p. ∞ suis, v. fâché, adj. ∞ voulu, v.

do it in spite of any body whatever. — Learning
faire, v. en, p. dépit, m. Science, f.

is preferable to riches, and virtue to both. — Some phi-
phi-

Iosophers have thought that fixed stars were
losophe, m. ont, v. cru, p. p. fixe, adj. étoile, f. étoient, v.

as many funs. — (Here are) two grammars, which¹ do
Voici, adv. ∞

you³ prefer²? — I prefer this to that. — Both are very
préférez, v.

good. — He believes nothing of what you told him.
croit, v. ne rien avez dit, v.

— You blame him who does not deserve it. — To
blamez, v. ∞ mérite, v.

whom did you speak? — I spoke to nobody, for
avez, v. parlé, p. p. ai parlé, v. car, c.

I saw neither of them.
ai vu, v. ∞



SECT. IV.

OF VERBS, AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>Les verbes auxiliaires,</i> | auxiliary. |
| 2. <i>Les verbes actifs,</i> | active. |
| 3. <i>Les verbes passifs,</i> | passive. |
| 4. <i>Les verbes neutres,</i> | neuter. |
| 5. <i>Les verbes réfléchis,</i> | reflective. |

6. *Les verbes personnels,* personal.
 7. *Les verbes impersonnels,* impersonal.

Some of them are *regular*, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*. In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object: ex.
Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux. The master punishes the lazy scholars.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases, one to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case*; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and is called the *indirect* or *relative case*: ex.

Votre sœur a écrit une longue lettre à mon frère, Your sister wrote a long letter to my brother.

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother* the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*.—The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex,

Les écoliers paresseux seront punis. Lazy scholars shall be punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep.		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	You travel.
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	We study.		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	He repents himself.
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	She praises herself.

These

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have but the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action : ex.

Recommencer, To begin again.

Refaire, To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

The above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided, without losing its meaning, as

<i>Appeller</i> , To call ;		<i>Voir</i> , To see ;
<i>Bâtir</i> , To build ;		<i>Prendre</i> , To take ;
<i>Mentir</i> , To lie ;		<i>Vivre</i> , To live ;

which would mean nothing if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables, as

<i>Rappeller</i> , To recal.		<i>Prévoir</i> , To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir</i> , To rebuild.		<i>Entreprendre</i> , To undertake.
<i>Démentir</i> , To belie.		<i>Survivre</i> , To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them part or the whole of a preposition.

CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflexions or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons*, and *numbers*.

M O O D S.

Mood, or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflexions.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflexions or by some other difference. They are: •

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive, or conjunctive.

Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an indefinite and indeterminate manner, that is, without affirmation, and without any relation as to time, number, or person: ex.

Parler, To speak.

Chanter, To sing.

Danser, To dance.

Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only indicates the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person; without being preceded or governed by either a conjunction or verb: ex.

J'écris une lettre, I write a letter.

Il chante une chanson, He sings a song.

Ecris and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction* or another verb to make a complete sense: the definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to command*; and

* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive; this will be explained in time.

and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding, intreating, praying, exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding*: ex.

Ne méprisez pas les avis que je vous donne, Do not *despise* the advice which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

Je vous exhorte, je vous prie, de ne pas mépriser mes avis, I exhort, I entreat, you not to despise my advice.

This mood has no first person in the singular, because it is impossible to command one's self; and, if it have the first person plural, it is because one speaks as much to others as to one's self: as when we say,

Evitons tout ce qui pourroit offenser les autres, Let us avoid every thing that might offend others.

The second person singular, the first and second plural, admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, OR CONJUNCTIVE.

The name of subjunctive or conjunctive sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, or subject to, some conjunction; and, if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

Je travaille afin que vous vous reposiez, I work that you may rest yourself,

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I purpose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

Je

Je désire que vous fassiez I wish that you may do your
vosre devoir, duty.

I well affirm that I wish ; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say, that you do, that you have done, that you will do, your duty ; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful ; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

T E N S E S.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses*, or *times*, in the verbs : viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood ; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive : ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Être aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

S I M P L E T E N S E S.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

C O M P O U N D.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé, ou composé,</i>	The participle past, or compound.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood, viz. five simple and five compound: they are,

SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérit défini,</i>	The preterite definite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel présent,</i>	The conditional present.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérit indéfini,</i>	The preterite indefinite.
<i>Le prétérit antérieur défini,</i>	The preterite anterior definite.
<i>Le plusqueparfait,</i>	The preterpluperfect.
<i>Le futur passé, ou composé,</i>	The future past, or compound.
<i>Le conditionnel passé,</i>	The conditional past.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses; two simple, and two compound.

SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le plusqueparfait,</i>	The preterpluperfect.

Before we proceed any farther on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in

a language, whose precision partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learners.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

S I M P L E.

PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or impression, mentioned by the verb, is existing, doing, or happening, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &c.</i>

The present is also used,

1°. When speaking of actions or things which we habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do: ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history.</i>
<i>Vous parlez François,</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglois ?</i>	<i>Does he read English.</i>

2°. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

<i>Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I set out this evening for the country ;</i>
<i>Que faites-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What do you to-morrow ?</i>
Instead of	
<i>Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I shall set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que ferez-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What will you do to-morrow ?</i>

3°. This

3°. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite definite or preterite indefinite, especially in orations, or set discourses, and in poetry, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses; *in the first*, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action present or doing at the time of an action that is past: as when I say,

<i>Mon frère apprenoit sa le-</i>	My brother <i>was</i> learning
<i>çon quand vous arrivâtes,</i>	his lesson when you arrived.

In the above sentence, the action of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the second, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of actions of habit, or actions reiterated, at a time which is not defined: ex.

<i>Quand j'étois à Londres,</i>	When I <i>was</i> in London, I	X
<i>j'allois souvent voir mes amis;</i>	often <i>went</i> to see my friends;	

that is, I often *used* to go, or I frequently *went*, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the character, or some *inherent* and *distinctive* quality, of persons or things no longer existing; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would*: ex.

<i>Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit le plus fin politique de son tems,</i>	Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, <i>was</i> the deepest politician of his time.	X
--	---	---

<i>César avoit je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie,</i>	Cæsar <i>had</i> I know not what of great in his physiognomy.
--	---

<i>Carthage faisoit un prodigieux commerce par le mo-</i>	Carthage <i>carried on</i> a prodigious trade by the	yen
---	--	-----

*ven de ses vaisseaux, qui
alloient jusqu'aux Indes,
Palmyre et Persépolis é-
toient de grandes et belles
villes,*

S'il venoit, je le payerois,

*George II. étoit d'une taille
plutôt petite que moyenne ;
il avoit les yeux très sail-
lans, le nez grand, et une
belle complexion ; il étoit
doux, modéré, et humain ;
sobre et régulier dans sa
manière de vivre : il se
plaisoit dans la pompe et
dans l'appareil militaire,
et étoit naturellement
brave : il aimoit la guerre
comme soldat, l'étudioit
comme une science, et a-
voit, sur ce sujet, une
correspondance établie a-
vec quelques-uns des plus
grands généraux que l'Al-
lemagne ait produits.*

*means of her ships, which
went as far as the Indies.
Palmyra and Persépolis
were large and fine ci-
ties.*

*If he would come, I would
pay him.*

*George II. was, in his per-
son, rather lower than
the middle size ; he had
remarkably prominent
eyes, a high nose, and a
fair complexion ; he was
mild, moderate, and hu-
mane ; in his way of li-
ving, sober and regular :
he delighted in military
pomp and parade, and
was naturally brave : he
loved war as a soldier, he
studied it as a science,
and had, on that account,
a settled correspondence
with some of the greatest
generals whom Germa-
ny had produced.*

From the above instances it might confidently be be-
lieved that every difficulty attending the use of this tense
will be entirely removed ; I shall, however, add, as a
farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in
English is in the preterite, can be made by the past tense
of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the par-
ticipie active, or when that preterite can be turned by
the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *used*, that
past tense must be made in French by the imperfect.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an
action done at a time determined or specified by an ad-
verb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so en-
tirely

tirely elapsed that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing : ex.

Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures, I was ill yesterday for two hours.

La dernière fois que nous allâmes le voir, nous eûmes un accueil favorable, The last time we went to see him, we had a kind reception.

Vous écrivites à votre frère il y a huit jours, You wrote to your brother eight days ago.

Ils eussent de grandes pertes l'année passée, They underwent great losses last year.

FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come : ex.

Je vous verrai demain à Londres, I will see you to-morrow in London.

Mon frère vous écrira la semaine prochaine, My brother will write to you next week.

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, immediately followed by an infinitive : ex.

Je vais, or je m'en vais, écrire à ma tante, I am going to write to my aunt ;

Je vais, or je m'en vais, partir, I am going to set out ;

Which signify,

Je lui écrirai tout présentement, I will write to him presently.

Je partirai dans l'instant, I will set out instantly.

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c. ex.

Le roi doit partir pour Cheltenham vers le milieu du mois de Juillet, et ne doit revenir qu'à la fin du mois d'Août.

The king is to set out for Cheltenham about the middle of July, and is not to return till the latter end of August.

That is,

On suppose que le roi partira, &c. et qu'il ne reviendra, &c.

It is supposed that the king will set out, &c. and will not return till, &c.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it : in fact it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present : ex.

*Je lirois si j'avois des livres,
Vous auriez la fièvre si vous
mangiez de ce fruit,*

*I would read if I had books.
You would have the fever
if you ate of that fruit.*

*Je serois mortifié s'il perdoit
son procès,*

*I should be mortified if he
should lose his law-suit.*

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que* : ex.

Il a promis qu'il viendrait,

*He has promised to come, or
that he will come.*

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it, and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it be very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

The preterite indefinite is employed in two different manners.

1°. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate time, but not too much distant from the time we speak : thus we must say,

J'ai

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister and</i>
<i>sœur et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le Roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The King of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avantageuse-</i>	<i>That has passed advanta-</i>
<i>ment pour votre cousin,</i>	<i>geously for your cousin.</i>

In the above sentences, the action is certainly past, but the time when it past is neither determined nor specified.

2°. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse : ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très bien réus-</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>si cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>snow this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange things</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which last still and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de* and the verb in the infinitive mood : ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire* preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que* with an infinitive preceded by *de* : ex.

<i>Il ne fait que d'arriver,</i>	<i>He is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Je ne fais que de sortir,</i>	<i>I have but just gone out.</i>

This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action : ex.

Vous ne faites que sortir, *You do nothing but go out.*
Elle ne fait què jouer et dan- *She does nothing but play*
ser; *and dance.*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

This tense expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past; and it is for that reason it is called *anterior*. It is also named *definite*, not only for its being a compound of the preterite definite of the verb *avoir*, but because it expresses an action done at a time determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus, when we say,

Quand ils eurent achevé de *When they had done play-*
jouer, ils se mirent à chan- *ing, they began singing,*
ter,

we mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and then that it was not till they *had done playing*, in which case the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, they began singing, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense; viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions,

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	}	As soon as ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		
<i>Dès que,</i>		
<i>Après que,</i>	}	After;
<i>Lorsque,</i>		
<i>Quand,</i>		

which never precede a preterpluperfect, unless the verb express a custom or habit.

Lastly, we must use the preterite anterior definite when the adverb, *bientôt*, soon, precedes or follows the verbs *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

L'affaire fut bientôt faite, *The business was soon over.*
J'eus bientôt fini de manger, *I soon had done eating.*

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

The preterpluperfect expresses, as well as the above tense, an action past before another, which is past also, but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the preterpluperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As, when we say,

Nous avions diné lorsqu'il arriva, *We had dined when he arrived;*

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

FUTURE PAST, or COMPOUND.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction: what is meant by that, is not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action happens, or even before it happens: ex.

Je serai parti quand vous reviendrez, *I shall be gone when you come back.*

Quand vous aurez fini vos affaires vous viendrez me trouver, *When you have done your business you shall come to me.*

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak in, will be a past time by the time you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that, the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the

conditional is accomplished, and consequently in a past time : ex.

Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois si j'eusse su votre adresse, I would have written to you a month ago if I had known your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the preterite indefinite of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses on account of its being seldom used : ex.

Quand j'ai eu diné, je suis parti, When I have had dined, I fet out.

But it is more elegant and more natural to say,
Après avoir diné, je suis parti, After I had dined, I fet out.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OR CONJUNCTIVE, MOOD.

The subjunctive, or conjunctive, has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense : ex.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, I do not think he will come.

Add the following observations to the latter :

1°. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action past in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood : ex.

Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise, I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.
J'attendrai qu'il vienne, I will wait till he come.

2°. When the verb, which is before the conjunction, is in some of the past tenses, or conditionals, and we wish not to design, by the second verb, a past time more distant than the first verb's, we must put this second verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive : ex.

Alexandre

*Alexandre ordonna que tous
ses sujets l'adorassent
comme un dieu,*

*Je voulois que vous écrivis-
siez à votre sœur,*

*Il souhaiteroit que vous pris-
siez des mesures plus con-
venables,*

Alexander ordered that all
his subjects should wor-
ship him like a god.

I wished you to write to
your sister.

He would wish you to take
more becoming mea-
sures.

3°. The preterite of the subjunctive mood is used
when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with
regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the con-
junction; and this tense is generally the present, pre-
terite indefinite, or future, of the indicative: ex.

*Je doute qu'aucun philosophe
ait jamais bien connu
l'union de l'âme avec le
corps,*

*Il a fallu que j'aie consulté
tous les médecins,*

*Je n'aurai garde d'y aller
que je n'aie reçu quelque
assurance d'être bien ac-
cueilli,*

I doubt whether any philo-
sopher have ever well
known the union of the
soul with the body.

I was obliged to consult all
the physicians.

I shall by no means go
there till I have received
some assurance of being
welcome.

4°. After the imperfect, preterites, preterpluperfect,
of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use
the preterpluperfect of the subjunctive mood; likewise
after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound
tense: ex.

*J'ignorois que vous eussiez
embrassé cette profession-
là,*

*Vous n'avez pas cru que je
fusse arrivé avant vous,*

*Nous aurions été sâchés que
vous vous fussiez adressé
à d'autres qu'à nous,*

I did not know you had
embraced that profession.

You did not believe I should
have arrived before you.

We should have been sorry
if you had applied to any
other but us.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers ; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

<i>Je fais,</i>	I do.	<i>Nous faisons,</i>	We do.
<i>Tu fais,</i>	Thou dost.	<i>Vous faites,</i>	You or ye do.
<i>Il fait,</i>	He does.	<i>Ils font,</i>	They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural with this difference, that, when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular : ex.

Vous êtes marié, and not *You are married.*
mariés,

Vous étiez général de l'ar- You were general of the
mée, and not *généraux,* army.

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux* if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominative it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular, because two or more nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives : ex.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont My brother and sister *are*
partis, gone.

That has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the others of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third : we must therefore say,

C'est vous et moi qui avons It is you and I who *have*
découvert tout ce complot, discovered all that plot.

Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur It is neither you nor my
qui avez ouvert la porte, sister who have opened
 the door, &c.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number : it is for that reason we must say,

C'est moi qui suis cause de It is I who am the cause of
ce malheur, that misfortune ;

C'est vous qui avez révélé It is you who have reveal-
ce secret, ed that secret ;

and not *qui a*, who has, as some people speak. *C'est a moi*

There are four conjugations in the French language, each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes *er*, as *donner*, to give.

The second *ir*, as *punir*, to punish.

The third *avoir*, as *recevoir*, to receive.

The fourth *re*, as *rendre*, to render. 25

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB, *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Avoir, to have.

Participle active.

Ayant, having.

Participle passive.

Eu, had.

Preterite.

Avoir eu, to have had.

Participle past.

Ayant eu, having had.

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

J'ai, I have.*Tu as*, thou hast.*Il a*, he has.*Elle a*, she has.

Plural.

Nous avons, we have.*Vous avez*, you or ye have.*Ils ont*, they have.*Elles ont*, they have.

Imperfect. Sing.

J'avois, I had.*Tu avois*, thou hadst.*Il avoit*, he had.

Plural.

Nous avions, we had.*Vous aviez*, you had.*Ils avoient*, they had.

Pret. defin. Sing.

J'eus, I had.*Tu eus*, thou hadst.*Il eut*, he had.

Plural.

Nous eûmes, we had.*Vous eûtes*, you had.*Ils eurent*, they had.

Future. Singular.

J'aurai, I shall or will have.*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

Plural.

Nous aurons, we shall, &c. have.*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

Conditional present. Singular.

J'aurais, I should, could, would, or might, have.*Tu aurais*, thou wouldst, &c. have.*Il aurait*, he would, &c. have.

Plural.

Nous aurions, we should, &c. have.*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.*Ils auraient*, they would, &c. have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding: ex.

Pret. indef.

J'ai eu, I have had, &c.

Pret.

Pret. ant. def.

J'eus eu, I had had, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

J'avois eu, &c. I had had, &c.

Future past.

J'aurai eu, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Cond. past.

J'aurais eu, &c. I would, should, could, or might, have had, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Aie, have thou.

Qu'il ait, let him have.

Qu'elle ait, let her have.

Plural.

Ayons, let us have.

Ayez, have ye or you.

Qu'ils or elles aient, let them have.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que j'aie, that I may have, or have.

tu aies, thou may'st have.

il ait, he may have.

Plural.

Que nous ayons, that we may have.

vous ayez, you may have.

ils aient, they may have.

Imperfect. Singular.

Que j'eusse, that I might have, or had.

tu eusses, thou mightest have.

il eût, he might have.

Plural.

Que nous eussions, that we might have.

vous eussiez, you might have.

ils eussent, they might have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the two preceding: ex.

Preterite.

Preterite.

Que j'aie eu, &c. that I may have had.

Preterpluperfect.

Que j'eusse eu, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation: ex.

Je n'ai pas,

I have *not*;

Nous n'avons pas,

We have *not*;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB, *ETRE*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Etre, to be.

Participle active.

Etant, being.

Participle passive.

Êté, been.

Preterite.

Avoir été, to have been.

Participle past.

Ayant été, having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je suis, I am.

Tu es, thou art.

Il est, he is.

Plural.

Nous sommes, we are.

Vous êtes, you are,

Ils sont, they are,

Imperfect. Sing.

J'étois, I was.

Tu étois, thou wast.

Il étoit, he was.

Plural.

Nous étions, we were.

Vous étiez, you were.

Ils étoient, they were.

Pret. defin. Sing.

Je fus, I was.

Tu fus, thou wast.

Il fut, he was.

Plural.

Nous fûmes, we were.

Vous fûtes, you were.

Ils furent, they were.

Future. Singular.

Je serai, I shall or will be.

Tu seras, thou wilt, &c. be.

Il sera, he will, &c. be.

Plural.

Plural.

Nous serons, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

Conditional present. Singular.

Je serois, I would, could, should, or might, be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldest, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

Plural.

Nous serions, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

Pret. indef.

J'ai été, &c. I have been, &c.

Pret. anterior definite.

J'eus été, &c. I had been, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

J'avois été, &c. I had been, &c.

Future past.

J'aurai été, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

Conditional past.

J'aurois été, &c. I should, could, would, or might, have been, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Sois, be thou.*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

Plural.

Soyons, let us be.*Soyez*, be ye.*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.

L

SUBJUNC-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je sois, that I may be, or be.
tu sois, thou mayest be.
il soit, he may be.

Plural.

Que nous soyons, that we may be.
vous soyez, you may be.
ils soient, they may be.

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je fusse, that I might be, or were.
tu fusses, thou mightest be.
il fût, he might be.

Plural.

Que nous fussions, that we might be:
vous fussiez, you might be.
ils fussent, they might be

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Preterite.

Que j'aie été, that I may have been, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

Que j'eusse été, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: ex.

Je ne suis pas, I am not.
Nous ne sommes pas, We are not.

EXERCISES UPON THE TWO AUXILIARY VERBS.

GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in person and number; but, after collective nouns, such as
amas,

amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plupart, &c. followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in number : ex.

La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné, Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learners, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises, as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being seldom or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD:

PRES. I have a book. — I am happy. — He has
livre, m. heureux, adj.

a hat which is too big. — We have no
chapeau, m. trop, adv. grand, adj.

money. — We are not ambitious. — You have a
argent, m. ambitieux, adj.

sword. — You are very proud. — Those girls
épée, f. orgueilleux, adj. fille, f.

have modesty ; they are virtuous.
modestie, f. vertueux, adj.

IMP. I had a friend. — I was grateful. — My
ami, m. reconnoissant, adj.

sister had no work, she was lazy. — We had
ouvrage, m. paresseux, adj.

a holiday, we were very glad of it. — You had
congé, m. aise, adj.

company, but you were not ready. — Your brothers
compagnie, f. mais, c. prêt, adj.

had learning, they were loved by every body.
savoir, m. aimé, p. p. de

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse I
Dès que, c. beau, adj. cheval, m.
 was merry. — My cousin had a little gar-
de bonne humeur. cousin, m. petit, adj. jar-
 den, he was ingenious. — As soon as we had bread,
din, m. adroit, adj. pain, m.
 we were satisfied. — You had fine weather, you were
rassasié, p.p. tems, m.
 pleased. — Your friends had beautiful flowers, they
content, adj. beau, adj. fleur, f.
 were very careful of them.
soigneux, adj.

FUT. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.
 — Miss White shall have a bird that will be very
oiseau, m.
 tame. — We shall have no books ; we shall not
apprivoisé, adj.
 be learned. — You shall have pens and paper ; you
savant, adj. plume, f. papier, m.
 will be busy. — The English will have a good ad-
occupé, adj. a-
 miral ; they will be victorious.
miral, m. victorieux, adj.

COND. PRE. I could have a pretty dog. — I
joli, adj. chien, m.
 would not be troublesome. — Mr. Thomas would have
importun, adj.
 good wine ; it would be a delicious thing. — We
vin, m. ce délicieux, adj. chose, f.
 would have a dictionary ; we would not be negligent.
dictionnaire, m.
 — You would have good officers ; you would be in-
officier, m. in-
 vincible.

vincible. — These ladies should have a better re-
vincible, adj. dame, f. meilleur, adj. ac-
 ception; they would be thankful.
cueil, m. reconnoissant, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience, and be indulgent. — Let her have a
 gown; let her be happy. — Let us have at least
robe, f. au moins, adv.
 some gratitude; let us be diligent. — Let them have
reconnoissance, f.
 partridges; let them be merry.
perdrix, f. joyeux, adj.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. — That I may
richesses, f.
 be charitable. — That he may have scholars. — That
écolier, m.
 he may be attentive. — That we may have a good
attentif, adj.
 house. — That we may be well lodged. — That
maison, f. bien, adv. logé, p. p.
 you may have your money; that you may be paid. —
argent, m. payé, p. p.
 That they may have apples; that they may be ripe.
pomme, f. mûr, adj.

IMP. That I might have generosity. — That I
générosité, f.
 might not be poor. — That he might have no plea-
pauvre, adj. plai.
 sure. — That he might be uneasy. — That we might
sir, m. inquiet, adj.

have our share. — That we might not be deceived. —
part, f. trompé, p. p.

That you might have a couple of fowls. — That you
couple, f. poulet, m.

might be pleased. — That they might have no pen-
content, adj.

sion. — That they might not be rewarded.
récompensé, p. p.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble; I have not
bien, adv. peine, f.

been rewarded. — Your brother would have had
frère, m.

leave if he had been diligent. — If you had mar-
permission, f. épou-

ried him, you would have had a tyrant instead
fé, p. p. tyran, m. au lieu, p.

of a husband; you never could have been happy. —
mari, m. ne jamais

If we had fought we could not have been con-
combattu, p. p. vain-

quered. — Thomas has had two holidays because he
cu, p. p. congé, m. parceque, c.

has been very active. — Your friend could have had a
actif, adj.

better watch, he would not have been cheated. — Your
montre, f. trompé, p. p.

uncle and my brother have been wet. — You could
oncle, m. mouillé, p. p.

have killed a hare if you had had a gun.
tué, p. p. lièvre, m. fi, c. fusil, m.

After

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first, with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative: ex.

S I N G U L A R.

Affirmatively.

Ai-je ? have I? *Suis-je ?* am I?
A-t-il ? has he? *Est-il ?* is he?
Mon frère a-t-il ? has my brother?
Sa fille est-elle ? is her daughter?

Negatively.

N'ai-je pas ? have I not? *Ne suis-je pas ?* am I not?
N'a-t-il pas ? has he not? *N'est-il pas ?* is he not?
Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ? has not my sister?
Votre cousin n'est-il pas ? is not your cousin?

P L U R A L.

Affirmatively.

Avons-nous ? have we? *Sommes-nous ?* are we?
Avez-vous ? have you? *Etes-vous ?* are you?
Ont-ils ? have they? *Sont-ils ?* are they?
Vos frères ont-ils ? have your brothers, &c.
Ses filles sont-elles ? are his daughters, &c.

Negatively

N'avons-nous pas ? have we not?
N'avez-vous pas ? have you not?
N'ont-ils pas ? have they not?
Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ? have not his children?
Ne sommes-nous pas ? are we not?
N'êtes-vous pas ? are you not?
Ne sont-ils pas ? are they not?
Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ? are not my sisters, &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that, when there is a noun, standing as nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and, when the verb terminates

nates with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added, in the third person singular, between the verb and the pronoun, the noun beginning the phrase : ex.

Votre oncle a-t-il des enfans? Has your uncle any children?

that is, your uncle, has *he* any children?

Mon cousin aura-t-il congé? Will my cousin have a holiday?

that is, my cousin, will *he* have a holiday?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs. : ex.

Votre frère joue-t-il du violon? Does your brother play on the fiddle?

Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici aujourd'hui? Will her sister dine here to day? &c..

But, if the sentence begin with *que*, interrogative, or an *adverb*, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and the *noun* is to be put after the verb : ex.

Que fait votre sœur? What is your sister doing?
Comment se porte votre frère? How does your brother?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood ; and, as for the compounds, it needs only to be remarked, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

Ai-je eu? have I *had*?

N'ai-je pas eu? have I not *had*? &c.

Ai-je été? have I *been*?

N'ai-je pas été? have I not *been*? &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

Have I my books? — Am I not unhappy to
malheureux, adj. *de*
 have

have lost his friendship? — Has he no money? —
perdu, p.p. amitié, f.

Is my sister arrived? — Has not your father a great
arrivé, p.p.

deal of friendship for you? — Have not your parents
amitié, f.

sent you all the money you wanted? — Have
envoyé, p.p. avoir, v. besoin de.

we not a garden? — Are we not very happy? — Have
jardin, m.

you a good gun? — Are you dexterous? — Have not
fusil, m. adroit, adj.

my brother and sister a beautiful coach? — Are not
carrosse, m.

Paul and Thomas two pretty children? — Are your
joli, adj.

brothers arrived? — Are you not glad to see them?
de voir, v.

— Have they spoken to you? — Had you not a little
parlé, p.p.

dog? — Was not your paper very good? — Are not

the English ladies generally handsomer than the
généralement, adv.

French? — Shall you have occasion for your dictionary?
besoin, m. de

ry? — Shall I not have the pleasure to see you to-
de voir, v. de-

morrow? — Were you not in the room? — Shall we
main, adv. chambre, f.

not have leave? — Will they not be angry? —
permission, f. fâché, adj.

Could you not have had a better watch? — If France
Si, c.

were

were as rich as England, would it not be the
riche, adj. *ce*, pro.

best country in* the world? — Will you not be asha-
pays, m. *hon-*

med? — Has not your friend had bad weather?
teux, adj. *mauvais*, adj. *tems*, m.

— Had not our admiral better seamen than yours? —
matelot, m.

Has he been victorious? — Would not your hat be too
victorieux, adj.

big? — Is not your sister older than mine? —
grand, adj. *agé*, adj.

Are you not happier than if you were married? —
marie, p. p.

Shall not John have a holiday if he be diligent? —
Jean

Has not your cousin more money than you? — Was
 not your wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it
 is to know these two verbs perfectly well, because the
 compound tenses of all the others are formed with them.
 When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will
 only have to add the participle passive to any of their
 tenses : ex.

J'ai aimé, I have loved, or, did love.

Je n'ai pas chanté, I have not sung, or, I did not sing.

Ai-je parlé? have I spoken? or, did I speak?

N'ai-je pas étudié? have I not studied? or, did I not
 study?

Avez-vous dansé? have you danced? or, did you dance?

N'avez-vous pas écrit? have you not written? or, did
 you not write?

Je suis puni, I am punished.

Je ne suis pas attendu, I am not expected.

Suis-

* See the degrees of comparison.

Suis-je aimé? am I loved?

Ne suis-je pas perdu? am I not undone?

Etes-vous marié? are you married?

N'êtes-vous pas convaincu? are you not convinced?

REMARK ON THE VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered in French, by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive : ex.

<i>Quel âge avez-vous ?</i>	<i>How old are you ?</i>
<i>J'ai sept ans,</i>	<i>I am seven years old.</i>
<i>Avez-vous faim ?</i>	<i>Are you hungry ?</i>
<i>Non mais j'ai soif,</i>	<i>No, but I am thirsty, &c.</i>

E X E R C I S E S.

How old is your daughter? — She is seven years

Quel, pro. fille, f. an, m.

old. — My son will be eleven years old (in the)

1898
fils, m. au

month of April. — I was very hungry when I

mois, m. Avril, m. grand, adj. quand, c.

arrived. — Were you not very thirsty? — He is

suis arrivé, v. *grand, adj.*

not afraid. — You will soon be warm. — Are

peur, f. *bientôt*, adv. *chaud*, m.

you not cold? — How old are these two young chil-

froid, m. en-

dren? — The one is three years old, and the other is

fant, m.

not yet four. — Was not my sister more than

encore, adv.

ten years old when she died?

quand, adv. *mourut*, v.

FIRST

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Parl- <i>er</i> , to speak.
Participle active.	* <i>ant</i> , speaking.
Participle passive.	<i>é</i> , m. <i>ée</i> , f. spoken.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite.	<i>Avoir parlé</i> , to have spoken.
Part. past.	<i>Ayant parlé</i> , having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

<i>Je</i> parl- <i>e</i> ,	I speak, or, I do speak, or, am speaking. †
<i>Tu</i> <i>es</i> ,	thou speakest.
<i>Il</i> <i>e</i> ,	he speaks.

Plural.

<i>Nous</i> * <i>ons</i> ,	we speak.
<i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i> ,	you speak.
<i>Ils</i> <i>ent</i> ,	they speak.

Imperfect. Singular

<i>Je</i> parl-* <i>ois</i> ,	I was speaking, spoke, or, did speak.
<i>Tu</i> * <i>ois</i> ,	thou wast speaking, &c.
<i>Il</i> * <i>oit</i> ,	he was speaking, &c.

Plural.

<i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i> ,	we were speaking, &c.
<i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i> ,	you were speaking, &c.
<i>Ils</i> * <i>oient</i> ,	they were speaking, &c.

Preterite. Singular.

<i>Je</i> parl-* <i>ai</i> ,	I spoke, or did speak.
<i>Tu</i> * <i>as</i> ,	thou spokest.
<i>Il</i> * <i>a</i> ,	he spoke.

Plural.

† When in English a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb, *to be*, the auxiliary must be left out, in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed: ex.

<i>Je</i> parle, I am speaking;	<i>Je</i> priois, I was desiring;
<i>Vous</i> parlez, you are speaking;	<i>Nous</i> chantions, we were singing;
and not <i>je suis parlant</i> , <i>vous êtes parlant</i> , <i>j'étois priant</i> , &c.	

Plural.

Nous parl-**âmes*, we spoke.*Vous* **âtes*, you spoke.*Ils* *èrent*, they spoke.

Future. Singular.

Je parl-*erai*, I shall, or will, speak.*Tu* *eras*, thou shalt, or wilt, speak.*Il* *era*, he shall, or will, speak.

Plural.

Nous *erons*, we shall, or will, speak.*Vous* *erez*, you shall, or will, speak.*Ils* *eront*, they shall, or will, speak.

Conditional present. Singular.

Je parl-*erois*, I should, would, could, or might, speak.*Tu* *erois*, thou shouldest, &c. speak.*Il* *eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

Plural.

Nous *erions*, we should, &c. speak.*Vous* *eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils* *eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefinite. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Pret. ant. definit. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.Preterpluperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Future past. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall, or will, have spoken.Conditional past. *J'aurais parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Parl-*e*, speak thou.*Qu'il* *e*, let him speak.

Plural.

**ons*, let us speak.*ez*, speak ye.*Qu'ils* *ent*, let them speak.

M

SUBJUNC-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je parl-e, that I may speak or I speak.*tu es*, thou mayest speak.*il e*, he may speak.

Plural.

nous ions, that we may speak.*vous iez*, you may speak.*ils ent*, they may speak.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Que je parl-*asse*, that I might speak, or, I spoke.*tu *asses*, thou mightest speak.*il *ât*, he might speak.

Plural.

*nous *assions*, that we might speak.*vous *assiez*, you might speak.*ils *assent*, they might speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.Preterpluper. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs; the following are excepted: viz.

Aller, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional present; as, instead of saying, *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to the conjugation; we say,

Future.

Singular.

J'envverrai, I will send.*Tu envverras*.*Il envverra*.

Plural.

Nous envverrons.*Vous envverrez*.*Ils envverront*.

Conditional

* Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *g* or *c*, immediately succeeded by *a* or *o*, require, for the softening of their sounds, that an *e* be added to the *g*, and a cerilla to the *c*. Little stars are placed, where these alterations are required.

Conditional present.

Singular.

Plural.

J'enverrois, I would send.*Nous enverrions*.*Tu enverrois*.*Vous enverriez*.*Il enverroit*.*Ils enverroient*.

Puer is only irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood; as, *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of, *je pue*, &c. This verb is seldom used, for we say, *sentir mauvais*, instead, of *puer*,

N. B. The following verbs, *aboyer*, to bark, *essuyer*, to wipe, *employer*, to employ, *nettoyer*, to clean, *ennuyer*, to tire, to be tiresome, *noyer*, to drown, and a few others, change the *y* into *i*, wherever the letter *y* is immediately succeeded by an *e* mute: ex. *j'emploie*, *tu emploies*, *il emploie*; *nous employons*, *vous employez*, *ils emploient*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb affirmatively and negatively, ought to conjugate two others, with an interrogation affirmative and negative, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he makes the exercises: ex.

Affirmatively.

Manges-tu? dost thou eat?*Mange-t-il?* does he eat?*Parlons-nous?* do we speak? &c.

Negatively.

Ne parlé-je pas? do not I speak?*Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas?* does not my sister sing?

N. B. In many verbs, the common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of the indicative mood. — Instead of saying,

Mangé-je? Do I eat? *Punis-je?* Do I punish? &c. we say, *Est-ce que je mange?* *Est-ce que je punis?* &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present, of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into an *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it; as it is seen by *parlé-je*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively: ex.

Affirmatively.

J'ai dansé, I have danced, or, I did dance.

Negatively.

Je n'ai pas parlé, I have not spoken, or, I did not speak.

Interrogatively affirmatively.

Avez-vous chanté? Have you sung? or, Did you sing.

Interrogatively negatively.

N'a-t-il pas mangé? Has he not eaten? or, Did he not eat?

Observe that we make use of

Mener, To take, to carry,

Amener, To bring,

Emmener, To carry, to take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, or has not deprived them from it through illness or accident: in all other cases we make use of

Porter, To carry,

Apporter, To bring,

Emporter, To carry or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes but I never
jou-er, v. quelquefois, adv. mais, c. ne jamais, adv
 win. — How much does your brother give
gagn-er, v. Combien, adv. donn-er, v.
 for his board? — We do not command; we pray. —
pension, f. command-er, v. pri-er, v.

You

You always borrow; you never lend. — You
toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v. prêt-er, v.

are always speaking when I write. — Why
quand, adv. écris, v. Pourquoi, adv.

do you not grant him that favour? — What do
accord-er, v. grace, f.

they ask you for?
demand-er, v.

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. —
pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.

She was not speaking to you. — Were we not joking? —
badin-er, v.

Were you not scolding them when I came? — They
grond-er, v. vins, v.

were eating fish.
mang-er, v. poisson, m.

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while). — Did not
long tems, adv.

the king forgive them? — We wept for joy
roi, m. pardonn-er, v. pleur-er, v. de joie, f.

when we found her. — Why did you not play on
trouv-er, v.

Friday last. — They fastened the man to a
Vendredi, m. dernier, adj. li-er, v.

tree, knocked him down, and then robbed
arbre, m. affomm-er, v. ensuite, adv. vol-er, v.

him of his watch, gold ring, and all the money he
montre, f. bague, f.

had in his pocket.
poche, f.

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I
achet-er, v. fois, f.

go to London. — Will not your father send
irai, v. envoy-er, v.

you to school this winter? — What shall we give him?
école, f. hiver, m.

— Will you not carry the children to the play? —
men-er, v. enfant, m. comédie, f.

They will empty the bottle if you do not take
vid-er, v. bouteille, f. emport-er, v.
 it away.

COND. PRE. I would lend them money if they
prêt-er, v.

were not so idle. — Would not your mother de-
pareffeux, adj. mé-

spise such a conduct? — Why should we send
pris-er, v. tel, adj. conduite, f.

them there? — I am sure you would marry her
sûr, adj. épous-er, v.

if she were rich. — Would they not pay us if they
riche, adj. pay-er, v.

had money?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to me. —
Brid-er, v. cheval, m. amen-er, v.

Give a chair to that lady. — Let her not (come up),
chaise, f. dame, f. mont-er, v.

for I am engaged. — Let us carry those peaches to Mrs.
engagé, p. p. pêche, f.

D——. — Do not neglect your affairs. — Let them
néglig-er, v. affaire, f.

hunt.

chass-er, v.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. — Thought† he
aid-er, v. Quoique, c.

do

† Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood.

do not approve of my plan. — Provided† we
approuv-er, v. plan, m. Pourvuque, c.

avoid their company. — That you may try
évit-er, v. compagnie, f. éprouv-er, v.

that gun. — That they may not command.
fusil, m.

IMP. That I might change my opinion. — That
chang-er, v. opinion, f.

he might eat an apple. — That we might not fall
pomme, f. tomb-er, v.

into their hands. — That you might encourage the
dans, p. main, f. encourag-er, v.

industrious. — They they might exercise their ta-
industrieux, adj. exerc-er, v. ta-

lents.

lent, m.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. — He
oubl-er, v. de apport-er, v. canif, m.

has not yet spoken to us. — Has she brought her
encore, adv. s.

work with her? — Have we not gained our cause? —
gagn-er, v.

Why have you not yet begun your exercise? —
commenc-er, v. thème, f.

You had taken the mustard away. — You would
emport-er, v. moutarde, f.

have judged more favourably of him. — Stay
jug-er, v. favorablement, adv. Rest-er, v.

here till† we have dined. — Could we not
ici, adv. jusqu'à ce que, c. din-er, v.

have assisted that family? — They have broken their
aid-er, v. famille, f. cass-er, v.

windows,

windows, because they had not illuminated as
fenêtre, f. parceque, c. illumin-er, v. comme, adv.

it had been ordered. — I shall have dined soon. —
ordonn-er, v. bientôt, adv.

We would have sent them to prison if they had
envoy-er, v. en prison, f.

resisted. — That we may have denied the fact. —
résist-er, v. ni-er, v. fait, m.

Had you not imitated their manners? — They had not
imit-er, v. manière, f.

executed his commands. — Had I not lighted
exécut-er, v. commandement, m. allum-er, v.

the fire? — They would have carried him to the con-
feu, m.

cert if I had not hindered them (from it.) — We
empêch-er, v.

might have accepted of his offers.
accept-er, v. off-er, f.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	<i>issant</i> , punishing.
Participle passive.	<i>i, m. ie, f.</i> punished.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite.	<i>Avoir puni</i> , to have punished.
Part. past.	<i>Ayant puni</i> , having punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je pun-*is*, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.

Tu is.

Il it.

Plural.

Plural.

Nous pun-issons, we punish, &c.*Vous* *issez.**Ils* *issent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

Je pun-issois, I did punish, or I was punishing.*Tu* *issois.**Il* *issoit.*

Plural.

Nous *issions*, we did punish, &c.*Vous* *issiez.**Ils* *issoient.*

Preterite. Singular.

Je pun-is, I punished, or I did punish.*Tu* *is.**Il* *it.*

Plural.

Nous *îmes*, we punished, &c.*Vous* *îtes.**Ils* *irent.*

Future. Singular.

Je pun-irai, I shall or will punish*Tu* *iras.**Il* *ira.*

Plural.

Nous *irons*, we shall or will punish.*Vous* *irez.**Ils* *iront.*

Conditional present. Singular.

Je pun-irois, I should; would, could, or might, punish.*Tu* *irois.**Il* *iroit.*

Plural.

Nous *irions*, we should, &c. punish.*Vous* *iriez.**Ils* *iroient.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.

Pret.

Pret. ant. def.	<i>J'eus puni</i> , I had punished.
Preterpluperf.	<i>J'avois puni</i> , I had punished.
Future past.	<i>J'aurai puni</i> , I shall, &c. have punished.
Cond. past.	<i>J'aurais puni</i> , I should, &c. have punished.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Pun-*is*, punish thou.*Qu'il isse*, let him punish.

Plural.

issent, let us punish.*issez*, punish ye.*Qu'ils issent*, let them punish.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I may punish, or I punish.*tu isse*.*il isse*.

Plural.

nous issons, that we may punish.*vous issiez*.*ils issent*.

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I might punish, or I punished.*tu isse*.*il it*.

Plural.

nous issons, that we might punish.*vous issiez*.*ils issent*.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.Preterplu. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about 200 regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular.

Acquérir,

<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire.	<i>Ouvrir</i> , to open.
<i>Affaillir</i> , to assault.	<i>Partir</i> , to set out.
<i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>Courir</i> , to run.	<i>Sentir</i> , to smell.
<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather.	<i>Servir</i> , to serve.
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep.	<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.
<i>Faillir</i> , to fail.	<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer.
<i>Fuir</i> , to fly, to avoid.	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.
<i>Mentir</i> , to lie.	<i>Venir</i> , to come.
<i>Mourir</i> , to die.	<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe.
<i>Offrir</i> , to offer.	And their compounds.

EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always finish my work before
toujours, adv. fin-ir, v. ouvrage, m. avant, p.
the others. — Your friend does not succeed in his
ami, m. réuss-ir, v. dans, p.
undertaking. — Do we not furnish arms against
entreprife, f. four-ir, v. arme, f. contre, p.
ourselves? — Why do you hate him? — They
ha-ir, v.
cure the diseases of the body and not those of
guer-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.
the mind.
esprit, m.

IMP. I was building my house when you de-
bât-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv. dé-
molished yours. — Was he not enjoying a good
mel-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.
estate? — We hated him, because he did not act kind-
bien, m. parceque, c. ag-ir, v. hon-
ly towards us. — On what were you re-
nêtement, adv. envers, p. Sur, p. ré-
flecting?

fleeting? — The mountains were resounding with
fléch-ir, v. montagne, f. retent-ir, v. de
 their cries.
cri, m.

PRET. I warranted them very good. — Did your
garant-ir, v.

master accomplish his promise? — We (leaped over)
maître, m. accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. franch-ir, v.

the ditch, and seized the guilty. — Why did you not
fossé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.

applaud that pretty actresses? — Did not the soldiers
applaud-ir, v. joli, adj. actrice, f. soldat, m.

obey the commands of their general?
obé-ir, v. à commandement, m.

FUT. When shall I banish all these thoughts
bann-ir, v. tout, adj. pensée, f.

from my mind? — This plant will soon blossom if you
plante, f. fleur-ir, v.

water it often. — We shall warn your relations
arroser, v. souvent, adv. avert-ir, v. parent, m.

of it. — Shall you not enjoy, as we do, the
comme, adv.

pure pleasures of the country? — Her children will
pur, adj.

bless her for it.
bén-ir, v.

COND. PRE. I would choose this cloth, if I were
chois-ir, v. drap, m.

in your place. — Would he not blush if he acted
roug-ir, v.

so? — We would not punish them if they were
ainst, adv. pun-ir, v.

diligent. — Would you not act with less seve-
avec, p. moins, adv. sévé-
rity?

city? — They could furnish us with arms and troops
rité, f. *troupe, f.*

if we wanted any.
avoir besoin.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. — Let him enjoy the
empl-ir, v. *verre, m.*

fruit of his labours. — Let us reflect on what we have
travail, m.

to do. — Let them define the question.
à faire, v. *défin-ir, v.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. — I wish he
pér-ir, v. *souhaiter, v.*
 may succeed. — That we may not (bear hardships.) —
réuss-ir, v. *pât-ir, v.*

That you may not hate us. — Provided they do not
 (grow tall.)
grand-ir, v.

IMP. That I might refresh my memory. —
rafraich-ir, v. *mémoire, f.*

That she might not roast the meat. — That we
rôt-ir, v.

might (become younger.) — That you might punish
rajeun-ir, v.

the idle. — That they might not (grow old.)
vieill-ir, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. — Has
rempl-ir, v. *cave, f. de*

he not leaped over the ditch? — We had finished our
fossé, m.

N

work.

work. — They would have seized him. — We
ouvrage, m.

should have perished without any assistance. — When
sans, p. secours, m.

shall I have built my house? — I have (very much)
bat-ir, v. beaucoup, adv.

weakened his courage. — Though they have ador-
affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c. em-

ned their gardens to dazzle the vulgar, they
bell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblouir, v. vulgaire, m.

have not succeeded, because they have disobeyed
parceque, c. desobé-ir, v. à

their father and mother.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive.
Part. active. evant, receiving.
Part. passive. *u, m. ue, f. received.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. Avoir reçu, to have received.
Part. past. Ayant reçu, having received.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je reç-*ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

Tu *ois*.

Il *oit*.

Plural.

Nous *evons*, we receive, &c.

Vous *evéz*.

Ils *oivent*.

Imperfect.

* Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in c, require, for the softening of their sound, that a cœlla be added to the (ç,) whenever it is followed by o or u.

Imperfect. Singular.

Je rec-*evois*, I did receive, or was receiving.*Tu* *evois*.*Il* *evoit*.

Plural.

Nous *evions*, we did receive, &c.*Vous* *eviez*.*Ils* *evoient*.

Preterite. Singular.

Je reç-*us*, I received, or I did receive.*Tu* *us*.*Il* *ut*.

Plural.

Nous *âmes*, we received, &c.*Vous* *âtes*.*Ils* *urent*.

Future. Singular.

Je rec-*evrai*, I shall or will receive.*Tu* *evras*.*Il* *evra*.

Plural.

Nous *evrons*, we shall or will receive.*Vous* *evrez*.*Ils* *evront*.

Cond. present. Singular.

Je rec-*evrois*, I should, would, could, or might, receive.*Tu* *evrois*.*Il* *evroit*.

Plural.

Nous *evrions*, we should, &c. receive.*Vous* *evriez*.*Ils* *evroient*.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.Pret. ant. def. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.Preterpluperf. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.Future past. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.Cond. past. *J'aurais reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Reç-ois, receive thou.

Qu'il oive, let him receive.

Plural.

evons, let us receive.

eviez, receive ye.

Qu'ils oivent, let them receive.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je reç-oive, that I may receive, or I receive.

tu oives.

il oive.

Plural.

nous evions, that we may receive.

vous eviez.

ils oivent.

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je reç-usse, that I might receive, or I received.

tu usses.

ilût.

Plural.

nous ussions, that we might receive.

vous ussiez.

ils ussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. Que j'aie reçu, that I may have received.

Preterplu. Que j'eusse reçu, that I might have received.

Recevoir des nouvelles de To hear from somebody.
quelqu'un,After the same manner are conjugated 7 verbs only ;
the following are excepted, being irregulars :

Assoir, to sit down.

Déchoir, to decay.

Falloir, (verb impersonal,)

to be needful.

Mouvoir, to move.

Pleuvoir, (v. imp.) to rain.

Pouvoir, to be able.

Savoir, to know.

Valoir,

Valoir, to be worth.
Voir, to see.

Vouloir, to be willing.
 And their compounds.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his con-
conc-evoir, v. *espérance*, f. *con-*
 duct. — I am to write to your brother to-morrow
duite, f. * *écrire*, v.
 to let him know that your father is arrived. —
pour faire, v. *savoir*, v.
 A commander ought to be intrepid in the midst
commandant, m. d. *evoir*, v. *au milieu*, m.
 of dangers. — He is to go and breakfast at my
aller, v. & *déjeuner*, v. *chez*, p.
 uncle's next Sunday, and he is to come and sup
venir, v. & *souper*, v.
 with us. — We sometimes entertain a hatred for per-
quelquefois, adv. *haine*, f.
 sons who deserve our friendship. — Do you not per-
mériter, v. *amitié*, f. *ap-*
 ceive a mountain beyond that tree? — We are
perc-evoir, v. *derrière*, p.
 to remit him the value in goods or in
remettre, v. *valeur*, f. *en*, p. *marchandise*, f.
 money. — Are you not to dine with my father and mo-
 ther to-morrow? — Men commonly owe their vir-
demain, adv. *d-evoir*, v.

N 3.

tues

* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered, in French, by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

Je dois aller au parc, I am to go to the park.
Nous devons lui écrire, We were to write to him.

tues or their vices to education (as much as) to
autant que, c.

nature. — Are these young ladies to go to the
aller, v.

ball?
bal, m.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she
guinée, f.

died. — Was not your brother to receive that money
mourut, v.

last Tuesday? — We received his tiresome visits
Mardi, m. ennuyant, adj.

because we were obliged to it. — Were you not to let
obliger, v. faire, v.

them know it sooner? — They were not to stay
savoir, v. rester, v.

above six weeks.
plus, adv.

PRET. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) of
bien, adv.

pleasure, the books you sent me. — As soon as we
envoyer, v.

perceived the danger we warned him of it. — They
avertir, v.

heard yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of you
mauvais, adj.

if you do not avoid Mr. R——'s company. — We
éviter, v.

shall owe him nothing more after this month. — I hope
après, p.

you will receive all my letters during my absence.
pendant, p.

COND.

(afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. — He
de loin, adv. *ne saurois*, v.

wrote to us by the first post, that we might
écrivit, v. *ordinaire*, m.

receive his orders (in proper time.)
à tems, adv.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have not yet received his answer. — You
encore, adv. *réponse*, f.

should have (been making) your theme this morning
faire, v. *matin*, m.

instead of playing. — He has entertained the hope
au lieu, p.

of living here all his life. — She ought to have
vivre, v. *ici*, adv. *vie*, f.

thanked him for the good advice he gave her.
remercier, v. *de*, p.

— When did you hear from your sister? — We have
 not heard from her since her departure. — Your
depuis, p. *départ*, m.

uncle should not have obliged him to pay half the
oncle, m. *à moitié*, f.

expences. — We should have owed him a hundred
frais, m. pl.

livres. — I beg your pardon, I ought not to have
livre, f. *demander*, v.

made you wait so long. — Ought not we to
faire, v. *attendre*, v. *longtems*, adv.

have employed our time better than (we did) the
employer, v. *nous n'avons fait*

last three months we were in France?

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Vend- <i>re</i> , to sell
Part. active.	<i>ant</i> , selling.
Part. passive.	<i>u</i> , m. <i>ue</i> , f. sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, or I am selling.*Tu* *s*.*Il*

Plural.

Nous *ons*, we sell, &c.*Vous* *ez*.*Ils* *ent*.

Imperfect. Singular.

Je vend-*ois*, I did sell, or was selling.*Tu* *ois*.*Il* *oit*.

Plural.

Nous *ions*, we did sell, &c.*Vous* *iez*.*Ils* *oient*.

Preterite. Singular.

Je vend-*is*, I sold, or did sell.*Tu* *is*.*Il* *it*.

Plural.

Nous *îmes*, we sold, &c.*Vous* *îtes*.*Ils* *irent*.

Future. Singular.

Je vend-*rai*, I shall or will sell.*Tu* *ras*.*Il* *ra*.

Plural.

Nous *rons*, we shall or will sell.*Vous* *rez*.*Ils* *ront*.

Conditional

Conditional present. Singular.

Je vend-rois, I should, would, could, or might, sell.*Tu rois**Il roit.*

Plural.

Nous rions, we should, &c. sell.*Vous riez.**Ils roient.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai vendu*, I have sold.Pret. ant. def. *J'eus vendu*, I had sold.Preterpluperf. *J'avois vendu*, I had sold.Future past. *J'aurai vendu*, I shall, &c. have sold.Cond. past. *J'aurois vendu*, I should, &c. have sold.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-s, sell thou.*Qu'il e*, let him sell.

Plural.

ons, let us sell.*ez*, sell ye.*Qu'ils ent*, let them sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je vend-e, that I may sell, or I sell.*tu es.**il e.*

Plural.

*Que nous ions.**vous iez.**ils ent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je vend-isse, that I might sell, or I sold.*tu isses.**il it.*

Plural.

Plural.

Que nous vend-issions.
vous issiez.
ils issent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.
 Preterplu. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about 40 verbs;
 the following are excepted as being irregulars :

<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve.	<i>Faire</i> , to make, to do.
<i>Battre</i> , to beat.	<i>Frir</i> , to fry.
<i>Boire</i> , to drink.	<i>Lire</i> , to read.
<i>Circoncire</i> , to circumcise.	<i>Mettre</i> , to put.
<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude.	<i>Moudre</i> , to grind.
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct.	<i>Naitre</i> , to be born.
And all the verbs ending	<i>Paitre</i> , to graze, to feed.
in <i>uire</i> .	<i>Plaire</i> , to please.
<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.	<i>Prendre</i> , to take.
<i>Connaitre</i> , to know.	<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.
And all those ending in	<i>Suffire</i> , to suffice, to be
<i>oitre</i> .	sufficient.
<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.	<i>Suivre</i> , to follow.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear	<i>Se taire</i> , to hold one's
And all those ending in	tongue.
<i>indre</i> .	<i>Traire</i> , to milk.
<i>Croire</i> , to believe.	<i>Vaincre</i> , to conquer.
<i>Dire</i> , to tell, to say.	<i>Vivre</i> , to live.
<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.	And their compounds.

N. B. Verbs of this conjugation whose radix terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*; the rest is conjugated as *vendre*.

EXERCISES

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong him. —
prétend-re, v. faire tort, v. lui, pro.

Is your mother coming down? — We expect our
descend-re, v. attend-re, v.

friend Mr. A — Do not you forbid her to
descend-re, v. de
 go there? — They sell bad fruit.
aller, v. mauvais, adj.

IMP. Did I not interrupt him whilst he
interromp-re, v. pendant que, c.
 was answering them? — She was melting into tears
répond-re, v. fond-re, v. en, p. larme, f.

when you arrived. — Were we not losing our time?
arriver, v. perd-re, v. tems, m.

— You were not spreading your nets. — Did they
étend-re, v. filet, m.

corrupt our manners?
corromp-re, v. mœurs, f. pl.

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I
Dès que, c.

returned them what they had lent me. — Did he not
rend-re, v. prêter, v.

hear you? — We (waited for) them a month.
entend-re, v. attend-re, v. mois, m.

— (For how much) did you sell it to them? — They
Combien, adv.

did spill all the wine.
répand-re, v.

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the) month
tond-re, v. troupeau, m. au

of May. — If you do not take care, the dog will
Mai, m. prenez, v. garde, f.

bite you. — Shall we not lose if we play? — You
mord re, v.

will melt it, if you put it into the fire. —
fond-re, v. mettez, v. dans, p.

They¹ shall³ not² hear³ of⁶ me⁷ (any⁴ more.)
entend-re parler, v. plus, adv.

COND. PRE. Should I not do him the jus-
rend-re, v.

tice he deserves? — Would he not interrupt you? —
mériter, v.

We would defend them if we could. — Why
défend-re, v. pouvions, v.

would you not answer if I were speaking to you?
répond-re, v.

— Your hens would (lay eggs) every day if they
poule, f. pond-re, v.

were not so fat.
gras, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give¹ God³ thanks². — Let her not come
Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grace, f.

down. — Let us (give up) our accounts faithfully. —
rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèlement, adv.

Do not lose my book. — Let them hear the voice of
voix, f.

the Lord.
Seigneur, m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP. Speak loud, that I may hear
haut, adv.

what you say. — She plays upon the hapsichord
dites, v. clavestin, m.

O

though

though you forbid her to do it. — He wrote
quoique, c. défend-re, v. de faire, v. écrivit, v.
 to us that we might not expect him?
attend-re, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book; have you found it? —
perd-re, v. trouver, v.
 She has broken her fan. — Have you not inter-
romp-re, v. évanouir, m.
 rupted me several times? — I had not then an-
alors, adv. ré-
 swered his letter. — If they (had gone) there,
pond-re, v. à étoient allés, v.
 would they not have lost their time? — He says he
dit
 would have sold us very good wine. — Had you
vend-re, v.
 not forbidden her to speak? — That they might have
de
 waited for us.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE REGU-
LAR VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I love attentive scholars, but I punish
attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.
 severely laziness and inattention. — Your bro-
sevérement, adv. paresse, f.
 ther does not receive this news with pleasure. —
nouvelle, f.
 Do we not expect your mother to-day? — We
attendre, v.
 hope (that) you will succeed in your undertaking. —
espérer, v. réussir, v.
 Why

Why do you not fulfil your promise? —
Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v. promesse, f.

They perceive the danger, and they do not en-
appercevoir, v. tâ-

deavour to shun it.
cher, v. de éviter, v.

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt, when you
tante, f.

(came in) and was doing her the justice she deserves.
entrer, v. rendre, v. mériter, v.

— Mr. N. did not act towards your son with much
agir, v. fils, m.

tenderness. — Mr. P. and I were answering your
tendresse, f.

letters when you arrived. — You undoubtedly en-
arriver, v. sans doute, adv. con-

tertained great hopes from his last voyage. —
cevoir, v. dernier, adj.

They were spending their money in trifles, in-
dépenser, v. en, p. bagatelles, f. au

stead of buying books.
lieu de, c. acheter, v.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven
 hundred and seventy-nine. — Your father yesterday
bier, adv.

received agreeable news. — She burst into tears af-
fondre, v. a-

ter your cousin was gone. — We sent him a
près que, c. parti, p. p.

great deal of money unknown to your mother. —
à l'insçu, p. de

Why did you not finish your work sooner? — (As
finir, v. Dès

soon as) they perceived us they (ran away.)
que, c.? *prireut la fuite.*

FUT. I will (give up) my accompts (at the) be-
rendre, v. *au*
 ginning of next week. — My friend Mrs. R.
prochain, adj. semaine, f.
 will dine with me next Wednesday. — We shall seize
Mercre. di, m. *saisir, v.*
 the first opportunity to thank him for his kind-
occasion, f. pour remercier, v. de bon-
nesses. — You will soon entertain a better opinion
té, f. bientôt, adv.
 of him. — Will not your sister (come down) to-day?
descendre, v.

COND. PRES. I would lay two guineas your
gager, v.
 uncle is not yet arrived. — If my father were rich he
arriver, v.
 would rebuild his country house. — Should we not ex-
rebatir, v. *Devoir, v.* *ex-*
 press our gratitude towards those who do us
primer, v. reconnoissance, f. font, v.
 good? — If you would, you could render great ser-
bien, m. vouliez, v. rendre, v.
 vices to your country. — I am certain (that) they would
pays, m.
 reward you if you deserved it.
recompenser, v. mériter, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your office. —
Remplir, v. équité, f. devoir, m. charge, f.
 Let him receive the punishment due to his crime. —
punition, f. dû, p. p.

Let

Let us give God thanks for the good news we re-
rendre, v. *grace, f. de*
 ceived yesterday. — Imitate the great actions of your
hier, adv.
 ancestors. — Let them enjoy the fruit of their la-
ancêtres, m. *jouir, v. de* *tra-*
 bours.
vail, m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post, that
Ecrivez, v. *ordinaire, m. afin que, c.*
 I may receive your letter before my departure from
avant, p. *départ, m.*
 London. — Though he hear what you say, yet
Quoique, c. *entendre, v.* *dites, v.*
 he does not understand you. — She is never pleased
comprendre, v. *content, adj.*
 though we obey her in (every thing.) — I will tell it
en, p. *tout.* *dirai, v.*
 to you, provided you do not speak of it to your sis-
pourvu que, c.
 ter. — He will pay them, provided they wait a
attendre, v.
 little longer.
long tems, adv.

IMP. I wrote to your father (sometime ago,)
écrivis, v. *il y a quelque tems,*
 that he might engage Mr. W. to come here and
afin que, c. *à* *en*
 spend the holidays with us. — That she might reflect
passer, v. *vacance, f.*
 on her own conduct, and not on that of others. —
propre, adj.

He would not come to see us, for fear we should
voulut, v. de peur que, c.

• perceive his bad designs. — Your uncle desired that
ordonner, v.

you might sell his two horses to Mr. B. — I should be
 very sorry if they fell into bad hands.
que, c. tomber, v.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not
 yet given me any answer. — Have I not faith-
encore, adv.

fully executed your orders? — Has your sister succeeded
 in her undertaking? — We have not yet received any
 remittance from America. — Mrs. N. told me you had
remise, f.

already sold the half of your goods. — Why
déjà, adv. moitié, f. marchandise, f.

did you not pay those poor people? — He would
gens, m. & f. pl.

have been punished if I had not defended his right. —
droit, m.

They have sold him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an
mouchoir, m. à

exorbitant price, but they have warranted them fine
prix, m. garantir, v.

and well worked. — We thought you would have
travailler, v. croyions, v.

brought your brother with you. — Have we not been
amener, v.

obliged

obliged to (wait for) Miss A. ? — If you had trusted
de attendre, v. *confier, v.*

them with your goods, they would have stolen the

greatest part of them. — It is for that reason my
partie, f. *Ce, pro.*

father has not (thought fit) to send them to you. —
juger, v. à propos

Mr. D. had represented to him all the danger of it. —

Mrs. F. has gained her cause, but she has lost all
gagner, v. *perdre, v.*

her wealth. — Had I not finished my work when
bien, m. *ouvrage, m.*

she came in ? — You would have received your money
entrer, v.

(a month ago) if the mail had not been robbed. —
il y a un mois *malle, f.* *voler, v.*

Mrs. P. told me she would have paid you some time
 ago if she had sold her goods.

CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated ; it requires only that the participle passive, of the verb which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb, *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that (in French) the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb: ex.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	M.	F.
<i>être</i>	aim-é,	ée, to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	ie, to be punished.

étant

<i>étant</i>	<i>aim-é,</i>	<i>ée,</i>	being loved.
<i>étant</i>	<i>pun-i,</i>	<i>ie,</i>	being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	<i>aim-é,</i>	<i>ée,</i>	to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	<i>pun-i,</i>	<i>ie,</i>	to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	<i>aim-é,</i>	<i>ée,</i>	having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	<i>pun-i,</i>	<i>ie,</i>	having been punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.	M.	F.	
<i>Je suis</i>		<i>aim-é,</i>	<i>ée,</i>	&c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>		<i>pun-i,</i>	<i>ie,</i>	&c. I am punished.
	Plural.			
<i>Nous sommes</i>		<i>aim-és,</i>	<i>ées,</i>	&c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>		<i>pun-is,</i>	<i>ies,</i>	&c. we are punished.

COMPOUND TENSES.

	M.	F.	
<i>J'ai été</i>	<i>pardonn-é,</i>	<i>ée,</i>	I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i>	<i>pun-i,</i>	<i>ie,</i>	I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i>	<i>aim-és,</i>	<i>ées,</i>	We have been loved, &c.

OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one, because the latter generally has or can always have a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has or can have but an indirect case; for instance,

<i>Dormir,</i>	to sleep;
<i>Venir,</i>	to come;
<i>Voyager,</i>	to travel;

are neuter verbs, because we cannot say,

<i>Dormir une maison,</i>	to sleep a house.
<i>Venir un livre,</i>	to come a book.
<i>Voyager la chambre,</i>	to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

Jouir, to enjoy;

Profiter,

Profiter, to profit by, to take advantage of ;

Parvenir, to attain, to reach ;

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case : ex.

Jouer d'une grande réputation, To enjoy a great reputation.

Profiter du tems, To take advantage of the weather.

Parvenir à son but, To attain one's end, &c.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter : ex.

Pleurer, to weep, to bewail ;

Sortir, to go out ;

Monter, to go up, to come up ;

Plaider, &c. to plead ;

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case or accusative : ex.

Elle pleure ses péchés, She bewails her sins.

Sortez ce cheval, Bring out that horse.

Il plaida sa cause lui-même, He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

Ferai-je bouillir ou rotir cette viande ? Shall I boil or roast that meat ?

Faites la bouillir, Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses by the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, others by the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule, to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If

If that participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animate object, the compounds of its verb are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

Arriver, to arrive ;
Mourir, to die ;
Naitre, to be born ;

Tomber, to fall ;
Venir, &c. to come ;

take the auxiliary verb *être*, because we can say,

Un homme arrivé, a man arrived.
Une femme morte, a woman dead.
Un enfant né, a child born.
Un cheval tombé, &c. a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

Dormir, to sleep ; | *Régner*, to reign ;
Languir, to languish, to linger ; | *Vivre*, &c. to live ;

take the auxiliary verb *avoir*, because we cannot say,

Un homme dormi, a man slept.
Une femme languie, a woman languished, or lingered.
Un enfant régné, a child reigned.
Un cheval vécu, &c. a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in this last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs ; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

Un homme couru, a man run ;
Une femme courue, a woman run ;

nor, *je suis couru*, *j'étois couru*, &c. but *j'ai couru*, *j'avois couru*, &c.

When we say in French *un homme couru*, *une femme courue*, we mean a man or a woman much sought after ; a person or thing we are very eager to see : ex.

Ce prédicateur est fort couru ;
Cette danseuse est fort courue ;

that

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être* : these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to remain.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

Monter and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen, in which case they are considered as active verbs and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* : ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs,</i> <i>or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the hill.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être* : ex.

<i>Je suis monté,</i>	<i>I am up.</i>
<i>Elle est déjà descendue,</i>	<i>She is down already.</i>

Sortir is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living ; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again : ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	<i>He is out of prison.</i>
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures.</i>	<i>I went out this morning at ten o'clock.</i>
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin ?</i>	<i>Did you go out this morning.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	<i>We have not been out all day.</i>
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	<i>The king has not been out of his room.</i>

Demeurer

Demeurer and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne, I lived two years in the country.

Il a resté vingt ans à Rome, He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place: ex.

Il est demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché, He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.

Nous sommes restés à York pour y finir nos affaires, We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.

Périr indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: ex.

Il est péri deux vaisseaux sur mer, Two ships have perished at sea.

Trois hommes ont péri par cette tempête, Three men have perished by that storm.

La plupart des équipages sont périés dans les ondes, le reste est péri de misère, Most of the crews perished in the waves, the rest perished with misery.

It seems however that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

Passer sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun, in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: ex.

Le roi a passé par Kensington pour aller à Windsor, The king went through Kensington to go to Windsor.

Nous avons passé devant l'église, We went by the church.

Elle a passé près du parc de St. Jacques, She went by St. James's park.

La couronne de Naples a passé The crown of Naples passed
dans la maison de Bourbon, in the house of Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*: ex.

Le roi est passé, vous ne The king is gone by, you
sauriez le voir, cannot see him.
Le beau tems est passé, The fine weather is over.
Vos chagrins sont passés, Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *in the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

Passer is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

Passer, in several cases, becomes an active verb and governs an absolute case: ex.

Passiez cela sur le feu, Pass *that* over the fire.
Les ennemis ont passé la ri- The enemies have crossed
vière, the river.
Passer l'épée au travers du To run one through the
corps, body.

Echapper has two significations; sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up: in this case, it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

Vous avez échappé là à un You have escaped a great
grand danger, danger.
Il a échappé à la mort. He has escaped death.
Ils sont échappés de leur pri- They have escaped from
son, or, their prison, or, made
Ils se sont échappés de leur their escape.
prison.
On la tenoit depuis quelques They had her for some
jours, mais elle est échap- days, but she has escaped,
pée, or, elle s'est échappée, or, made her escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular whenever they occur.

REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing ; so that the subject, that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me connois,</i>	I know myself ;
<i>Tu te loues,</i>	Thou praisest thyself ;
<i>Il se blesse,</i>	He wounds himself ;
<i>Nous nous chauffons,</i>	We warm ourselves ;

are reflected verbs, because it is I. who know and who am known ; thou who praisest and who art praised ; he who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se,* myself, thyself, himself, herself, for the singular ; *nous, vous, se,* ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is implied though it must be expressed in French : ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	I remember.
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	She will not marry.
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &c.</i>	We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner : viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	Verbs reflective by signification.
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	Verbs reflective by expression.
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	Verbs reflective direct.
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	Verbs reflective indirect.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflective by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action : ex.

Je me chauffe, I warm myself.
Elle se blesse, She wounds herself, &c.

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action : such as,

Je me repens, I repent ;
Il s'en va, He is going away ;
Elle se meurt, She is dying ;
Nous nous appercevons de We perceive our error ;
notre erreur,

which merely signify *je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous appercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct* ; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is governed in the dative case,) we call it *reflective indirect* : thus,

Je me flatte, I flatter myself ;
Tu te vantes, Thou boastest ;
Il se félicite, &c. He congratulates himself, &c.

are verbs *reflective direct*. On the contrary,

Il se donne des louanges, He gives himself praises ;
Nous nous promettons un We promise ourselves good
bon succès, success ;
Vous vous arrachez une You draw one of your
dent, &c. teeth, &c.

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *il donne des louanges à soi, nous promettons un bon succès à nous, vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

Verb reflective passive. This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb : ex.

Cela se voit tous les jours, That is seen every day.
Cela ne se dit point, That is not said.
Ce livre se vend bien, That book sells well.
Ce bruit se répand, That rumour is spread.

Ces fruits se mangent en hiver,

These fruits are eaten in winter.

Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusoit,

That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit*, &c. which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there is properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on* to avoid ambiguity or false sense: if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten; whereas I only wish to express the proper season to eat those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proques*, reciprocal, all these reflected verbs; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to well determine the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: thus,

Pierre et Jean se battent,

Peter and John are fighting or beating each other,

Paul et Robert s'aiment,

Paul and Robert love each other,

Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,

Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement*, &c.

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time that we often prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity: ex.

Pierre et Jean s'entraiment,

Peter and John love each other.

Ils

<i>Ils s'entrelouent,</i>	They praise one another.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entrèdétruisent, &c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*; hence it may be believed how much French people are shocked to hear any one who has learned that language say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse;
<i>Je m'avois blessé, or</i>	I had hurt myself;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself;
<i>Elles s'avoit moqué de moi, &c.</i>	She had laughed at me, &c.

too common expressions made use of by many English people who speak without principles; whereas we must say,

Je me suis acheté un cheval.
Je m'étois blessé, or
Il s'est fait mal.
Elle s'étoit moquée de moi.

Nous nous sommes informés,
Ils se sont promenés,
Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,

We have inquired.
 They have walked.
 Strange things have happened since your departure.

Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,

Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned that, in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir*; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun which relates to the principle of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary; for, though we say,

Il a voulu se tuer, He would kill himself;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer,* which is the idiom of the language.

Replu tarder

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Se *promener*, to walk.

Part. act. Se *promenant*, walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass. *promené*, *ée*, walked.

Plural.

Part. pass. *promenés* *ées*, walked.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite S'*être promené*, to have walked.

Part. pass. S'*étant promené*, having walked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je me promène, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.

Tu te promènes.

Il se promène.

Plural.

Nous nous promenons, we walk, &c.

Vous vous promenez.

Ils se promènent.

Imperfect. Singular

Je me promenais, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.

Tu te promenais.

Il se promenoit.

Plural.

Nous nous promenions, we did walk, &c.

Vous vous promeniez.

Ils se promenoient.

Preterite. Singular.

Je me promenai, I did walk, or walked.

Tu te promenais.

Il se promena.

Plural.

Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes, we did walk, &c.**Vous vous promenâtes.**Ils se promènèrent.*

Future. Singular.

*Je me promènerai, I shall or will walk.**Tu te promèneras.**Il se promènera.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons, we shall or will walk.**Vous vous promènerez.**Ils se promèneront.*

Conditional present. Singular.

*Je me promènerois, I would, should, or could, walk.**Tu te promènerois.**Il se promèneroit.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promènerions, we would, &c. walk.**Vous vous promèneriez.**Ils se promèneraient.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Pret. indefin. *Je me suis promen-é, ée, I have walked.*Pret. ant. def. *Je me fus promen-é, ée, I had walked.*Preterpluperf. *Je m'étois promen-é, ée, I had walked.*Future past. *Je me serai promen-é, ée, I shall or will have walked.*Cond. past. *Je me serois promen-é ée, I should, &c. have walked.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Promène toi, walk thou.**Qu'il se promène, let him walk.*

Plural.

* When the verb is conjugated with a negation these three pronouns are put before the verb : ex. *ne vous promenez pas, do not walk ; and toi is changed into te : ex. ne te promène pas.*

Plural.

*Promenons nous,** let us walk.*Promenez vous,** walk ye.*Qu'ils se promènent,* let them walk.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je me promène, that I may walk.*tu te promènes.**il se promène.*

Plural.

nous nous promenions, that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez.**il se promènent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je me promenasse, that I might walk.*tu te promenasses.**il se promênât.*

Plural.

nous nous promenassions, that we might walk.*vous vous promenassiez.**ils se promenassent.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Præterite. Que je me sois promen-é, ée, that I may have walked.*Præterpluperf. Que je me fusse promen-é, ée,* that I might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation : ex.

Je ne me promène pas, I do not walk.*Vous promenez-vous ?* do you walk ?*Né se promène-t-il pas ?* does he not walk ? &c.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Me suis-je promené ?

Have I walked ? or did I walk ?

Ne vous ttes-vous pas chauffé ? Have you not warmed yourself? or did you not warm yourself?

Mon cousin s'est-il informé ? Has my cousin enquired? or did my cousin enquire?

Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ? Has not your brother repented? or did not your brother repent?

We say in French,

Se promener à cheval, en carosse, To take a ride, an airing, on horseback, in a coach.

Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, To go upon the water, on the river.

EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked * are irregular : see the irregular verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRÉS. I rise (early) every morning.
se lever, v. de bonne heure, adv. matin, m.

Does not your brother remember to have
*se ressouvenir, v.**

seen me? — My sister is not well, she applies her-
vu, p. p. sœur, f. † s'appliquer, v.

self (too much) to study. — We rejoice at the good
trop, adv. étude, f. se réjouir, v. de

news he has brought us. — When do you in-
nouvelle, f. apporté, p. p. se pro-

tend to go and see Mrs. H.? — Do you not
poser, v. de aller, v. & voir, v.

repent of what you have done to her? — I
se repentir, v. de fait, p. p.*

believe

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter* : ex.

Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.

believe your brothers are not well, for I have not
croire, v.* † car, c.

seen them this week.

vu, p. p. semaine, f.

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park when
parc, m. quand, c.

I met him. — Was he not warming himself
rencontrer, v. se chauffer, v.

when you (came in?) — We did not imagine he
entrer, v. s'imaginer, v.

would succeed so well. — You were boasting too
réussir, v. se vanter, v.

much of what you had done for him. — They did
fait, p. p.

not expect that we should meet them.
s'attendre, v.

PRET. I enquired after you yesterday. — Did
s'informer, v. de hier, adv.

not my son behave well in the last war? —
fils, m. se comporter, v. dernier, adj. guerre, f.

Corn was sold yesterday for — a bushel. — We
se vendre, v.

saw ourselves surrounded by more than twenty
se voir, v.* entouré, p. p.

persons in an instant. — Did you not find
en, p. se trouver, v.

yourselves obliged to go there? — They did not
obligé, p. p. de aller, v.

stop one minute.
s'arrêter, v. minute, f.

FUT. I will not complain of you if you pro-
se plaindre, v.* pro-

mise me to behave better. — Will your bird
mettre, v.* de mieux, adv. oiseau, m.

(grow)

(grow tame?) — Shall we submit ourselves to
*s'appriivoiser, v. se soumettre, v.**

his judgement? — You will ruin yourselves if you
jugement, m. se ruiner, v.

continue (gaming.) — Will they not perceive
continuer, v. de jouer, v. s'apercevoir, v.

it (as soon as) they come into the room?
dès que, c. entrer, v. chambre, f.

COND. PRES. If I were in your place I would not
à

vex myself. — Would she not (make her es-
se chagriner, v. s'échap-

cape?) — We would embark (this day) if the
per, v. s'embarquer, v. aujourd'hui

weather (would permit.) — Why would you expose
tems le permettoit, v. s'exposer, v.

yourselves to their fury? — They would agree
fureur, f. s'accorder, v.

very well if they were not so proud.
bien, adv. orgueilleux, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but do not
donner, v. permission, f. de sortir, v. mais, c.

overheat yourself. — Let him amuse himself a
s'échauffer, v. s'amuser, v. un

little in my garden. — Let us remember what
*peu, adv. jardin, m. se ressouvenir de, v.**

we are to do. — Endeavour to please your master,
† faire, v. S'efforcer, v. de plaire, v. à maître, m.

and do not so often mistake in the tenses, numbers,
se tromper, v.

and

† See the reference * in the exercises upon the third conjugation, page
 137.

and persons, of the verbs. — Let them fall asleep.

*s'endormir, v.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I must apply myself to the French
Il faut que s'appliquer, v. François, adj.

language. — I will hide it, for fear she should
langue, f. cacher, v. de peur que, c.

perceive it. — Provided we remember to
s'appercevoir, v. en, pro. Pourvu que, c. de

ask him how his mother does
demander, v. comment, adv. se porter, v.

— (In order that) you may not boast (so much.)
Afin que, c. se vanter, v. tant, adv.

— I have told them who you are, that they may
dit, p.p. afin que, c.

behave better another time.
se comporter, v. fois, f.

IMP. That I might not ruin myself. — That
se ruiner, v.

he might not meddle with my affairs. — That we
se mêler, v. de

might excuse ourselves. — That you might not go
s'excuser, v. s'en

away. — That they might not repent too late.
aller, v. se repentir, v.* trop tard, adv.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have inquired after you and your sister. — He
s'informer, v. de

says you have not been well while you were in
dit, v. pendant que, c. à

the country. — Has not your cousin laughed at
campagne, f. cousin, m. se moquer, v. de

me? — Did we not get up at six (o'clock?) — They
se lever, v. à heure, f.

have

have perceived the trick, but it was too late? — Did
de tour, m.

you remember me? — I had not applied
se ressouvenir, v. de *s'appliquer, v.*

myself enough. — Had not your sister imagined that
assez, adv. *s'imaginer, v.*

they would have found themselves obliged to go
se trouver, v. *obligé, p. p. de*

to France? — Many things have been said of them
† *se dire, v.*

which are not true. — We had thought ourselves a-
*se croire, v.** *ca-*

ble to resist them, but we have (been de-
pable, adj. de résister, v. *mais, c.* *se trom-*

ceived.) — Did you not hide yourselves in order
per, v. *se cacher, v.*

to surprise them? — When I (shall) have walk-
de surprendre, v. *Quand, adv.*

ed five or six minutes in the garden I will rest
se reposer, v.

myself. — Why did you exhaust yourself as you have
s'épuiser, v.

done? — Our sailors would have behaved with
fait, p. p. *se comporter, v.*

more resolution. — Would you not have excused
s'excuser, v.

yourself? — When they have repented (of) their faults
se repentir, v.

I will forgive them. — If I had been in your place, I
à

would not have meddled with their affairs. — Your
se mêler, v. de

Q

friend

† See the indefinite article.

friend would not have complained of you, and you
se plaindre, v.*

never would have fallen out for so small a matter.
se brouiller, v. *chose*, f.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars*, because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, TO GO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Aller*, to go.
 Part. act. *Allant*, going.
 Part. pass. *Allé*, gone.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vais*, *vas*, *va*, I go, or am going.
 Plur. *Allons*, *allez*, *vont*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Allois*, *allois*, *alloit*, I did go, or was going.
 Plur. *Allions*, *alliez*, *alloient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Allai*, *allas*, *alla*, I went, or did go.
 Plur. *Allâmes*, *allâtes*, *allèrent*; or,

Sing. *Fus*, *fus*, *fut*, I went, or did go.
 Plur. *Fûmes*, *fûtes*, *furent*.

Future.

Sing. *Irai*, *iras*, *ira*, I shall, or will go.
 Plur. *Irons*, *irez*, *iront*.

Conditional

Conditional present.

Sing. *Irois, irois, iroit*, I should, could, would, or
might, go.

Plur. *Irions, iriez, iroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Va, aille*, go thou.

Plur. *Allons, allez, aillent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Aille, ailles, aille, that I may go.

Plur. *Allions, alliez, aillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Allasse, allasses, allât*, that I might go.

Plur. *Allassions, allassiez, allassent*.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked that those which are formed by the participle *allé* signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows that the first person of the preterite indefinite,

Je suis allé, I have gone, &c.

Tu es allé, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse, for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été, tu as été, j'eus été, j'avois été, j'aurois été, &c.* for when we say,

Il est allé à Londres, He is gone to London,

we give to understand that he is still in London, or is on his way going to London; on the contrary,

Il a été à Londres, He has been or gone to London, means that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one with the particle *en*: ex.

S'en aller, to go away.

Je m'en vais, I go, or am going away.

Tu t'en vas, thou goest, or art going away.

Il s'en va, he goes, or is going away.

Nous nous en allons, we go, or are going away.

Vous vous en allez, you go, or are going away.

Ils s'en vont, they go, or are going away.

Negatively.

Je ne m'en vais pas, I am not going away.

Il ne s'en va pas, he is not going away.

Nous ne nous en allons pas, we are not going away.

Vous ne vous en allez pas, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

S'en va-t-il? is he going away?

Vous en allez-vous? &c. are you going away? &c.

Ne s'en vont-ils pas? &c. are they not going away? &c.

Its compound tenses are,

Je m'en suis allé, I have gone away.

Je m'en fus allé, I had gone away.

Je m'en étois allé, I had gone away.

Je m'en ferai allé, I shall have gone away, &c.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Acquérir*, to acquire.

Part. act. *Acquérant*, acquiring.

Part. pass. *Acquis*, acquired.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquiers, acquiert*, I acquire, or am acquiring.

Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent*.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquérois, acquérois, acquéroit*, I did acquire, or
was acquiring.

Plur. *Acquérions, acquériez, acquéroient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Acquis, acquis, acquit*, I acquired, or did ac-
quire.

Plur. *Acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Acquerrai, acquerras, acquerra*, I shall, or will
acquire.

Plur. *Acquerrons, acquerez, acquerront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Acquerrois, acquerrois, acquerroit*, I should,
would, or could, acquire.

Plur. *Acquerriions, acquerriez, acquerriient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquière, acquire thou*.

Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*, that I may ac-
quire.

Plur. *Acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquîsse, acquîsses, acquît*, I might acquire.

Plur. *Acquîssions, acquîssiez, acquîssent*.

QUÉRIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but
in the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

Envoyez moi quérir, send for me.

CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER; REQUERIR,
TO REQUIRE; are conjugated like ACQUERIR.



BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Bouillir*, to boil.
Part. act. *Bouillant*, boiling.
Part. pass. *Bouilli*, boiled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bous*, *bous*, *bout*, I boil, or am boiling.
Plur. *Bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillois*, *bouillois*, *bouilloit*, I did boil, or was
Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouilloient*. boiling.

Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillis*, *bouillis*, *bouillit*, I boiled, or did boil.
Plur. *Bouillimes*, *bouillites*, *bouillirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Bouillirai*, *bouilliras*, *bouillira*, I shall or will
Plur. *Bouillirons*, *bouillirez*, *bouilliront*. boil.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Bouillirois*, *bouillirois*, *bouilliroit*, I should, would,
or could, boil.
Plur. *Bouillirions*, *bouilliriez*, *bouilliroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bous*, *bouille*, boil thou.
Plur. *Bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Bouille*, *bouilles*, *bouille*, that I may boil.
Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouillent*.

Imperfect

Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillisse, bouillisses, bouillit*, I might boil.Plur. *Bouillissions, bouillissiez, bouillissent*.

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *faire*: ex.

Faites bouillir cette viande, boil that meat.



COURIR, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Courir*, to run.Part. act. *Courant*, running.Part. pass. *Couru*, run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Cours, cours, court*, I run, or am running;Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Courois, courais, courait*, I did run, or was run-Plur. *Courions, couriez, couraient*. ning.

Preterite.

Sing. *Courus, courus, courut*, I ran, or did run.Plur. *Courûmes, courûtes, coururent*.

Future.

Sing. *Courrai, courras, courra*, I shall, or will, run;Plur. *Courrons, courrez, courront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Courrois, courrais, courrait*, I should, would, orPlur. *Courrions, courriez, courroient*. could, run.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, cours, cour*, run thou.Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*.

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Coure, coures, coure*, that I may run.
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût*, I might run.
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent*.

The compounds of this verb are :

<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.	<i>Parcourir</i> , to run over.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.	<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse.	to.
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.	<i>Secourir</i> , to succour, to as-
	sist.



COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See *OUVRIR*, TO OPEN.



CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather.
Part. act.	<i>Cueillant</i> , gathering.
Part. pass.	<i>Cueilli</i> , gathered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, I gather, or am ga-
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*. thering.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillois, cueillois, cueilloit*, I did gather, or
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueilloient*. was gathering.

Preterite.

Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillis*, *cueillis*, *cueillit*, I gathered, or did
 Plur. *Cueillimes*, *cueillites*, *cueillirent*. gather.

Future.

Sing. *Cueilleraï*, *cueilleras*, *cueillera*, I shall, or will,
 Plur. *Cueillerons*, *cueillerez*, *cueilleront*. gather.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Cueillerois*, *cueillerois*, *cueilleroit*, I should, would,
 or could, gather.
 Plur. *Cueillerions*, *cueilleriez*, *cueilleroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille*, *cueille*, gather thou.
 Plur. *Cueillons*, *cueillez*, *cueillent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que cueille*, *que cueillies*, *que cueille*, that I may gather.
 Plur. *Cueillions*, *cueillez*, *cueillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillisse*, *cueillisses*, *cueillit*, that I might ga-
 Plur. *Cueillissions*, *cueillissiez*, *cueillissent*. ther.

The compounds of this verb are,

Accueillir, to make wel- *Recueillir*, to gather toge-
 come. Very little used. ther.



DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.
 Part. pass. *Dormi*, slept.

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dors, dors, dort*, I sleep, or am sleeping.
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormois, dormois, dormoit*, I did sleep, or was
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dormoient*. sleeping.

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis, dormis, dormit*, I slept, or did sleep.
 Plur. *Dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Dormirai, dormiras, dormira*, I shall, or will,
 Plur. *Dormirons, dormirez, dormiront*. sleep.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Dormirois, dormirois, dormiroit*, I would, could,
 or should, sleep.
 Plur. *Dormirions, dormiriez, dormiroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dors, dorme*, sleep thou.
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Dorme, dormes, dorme*, that I may sleep.
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dorment*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormisse, dormisses, dormît*, that I might sleep.
 Plur. *Dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent*.

The compounds of this verb are.

Endormir, to make sleep. *Se rendormir*, to fall asleep
S'endormir, to fall asleep. again.

EXERCISES

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS,
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? — I am going to the
Où, adv.

play. — I would go with you if I had time. — Why
comédie, f.

are they going away so soon? — Will not your father
tôt, adv.

be angry if you go there without him? — We were
fâché, adj.

going to Miss D——'s when we met you. —
chez, p. rencontrer, v.

These men went yesterday from house to house. —
en, p.

Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. — Your fa-
Croire, v. voir, v.

ther told me you will go to France and Italy as soon
dire, v.

as war (is over.) — My sister and I went last
fera finie. dernier, adj.

Wednesday to Ranelagh. — If you had gone (there)

an hour sooner you would have heard fine music.
plutôt, adv. entendre, v.

— Your uncle has acquired a great name in Ameri-
nom, m.

ca. — Go and fetch me the letter I left in my room.
laisser, v.

— Boil this chicken and roast that goose. — At last
poulet, m. rôti, v. oie, f. Enfin, adv.

we have conquered. — This water will soon boil.
bientôt, adv.

— Boil that meat again, it is not done enough. —
cuit, p. p.

Do

Do not run so fast, you will be tired. — They al-
vite,adv. *fatigué*,p.p.

ways run when they go to see their aunt. — Your bro-
tante,f.

ther runs faster than I. — Let us not discourse any
vite,adv.

more on that subject. — I would assist him with all my
sujet,m. *de*

heart if I could. — This gentleman is a great tra-
pouvoir,v. *vo-*

veller, he has run over all Europe. — If you do
yageur,m. *faire*,v.

it you will incur your father's displeasure. — That
déplaisir,m.

would concur to the public good. — For whom are
bien,m.

you gathering those charming flowers? — I gather them
fleur,f.

for my mother. — Why do they not gather some roses?
rose,f.

— Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the garde-
jardi-
 ner told her he would gather them himself. — Do
nier,m.

not make any noise, for my sister is asleep. — I
faire,v. *car*,c.

hope she will sleep better to night. — She would sleep
ce soir,m.

much better if she were in her bed. — If I do not
lit,m.

walk a little I shall fall asleep. — My mother,
se promener,v.

sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to Croydon to
hier,adv.

see Miss H——. — Did you go there on foot?
mademoiselle, f. à

— No, my mother and sister went in a coach, and
en, p. ∞

my brother and I on horseback.
à cheval, m.



F U I R, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN, TO AVOID,
 TO FLY, OR FLEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Fuir*, to fly.
 Part. act. *Fuyant*, flying.
 Part. pass. *Fui*, fled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, I fly.
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois*, *fuyois*, *fuyoit*.
 Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyoient*.

Preterite.

This tense is conjugated with the verb *prendre* and
 the substantive *suite*: ex.

Je pris la suite, I fled, or ran away, &c.

Future.

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirai*, I shall, or will, fly.
 Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuirez*, *fuiront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Fuirois*, *fuirois*, *fuiroit*, I should, would, or
 Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiroient*. could, fly.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuye*, fly thou.
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que* Fuye, fuyes, fuye, that I may fly.
 Plur. Fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.

Imperfect.

Je prisse la fuite, &c. I might fly.

MENTIR, TO LIE. *Sortir.*INFINITIVE MOOD. *up 189*

Present. *Mentir*, to lie.
 Part. act. *Mentant*, lying.
 Part. pass. *Menti*, lied.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Mens*, mens, ment, I lie.
 Plur. *Mentons*, mentez, mentent.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentois*, mentois, mentoit, I did lie, or was lying.
 Plur. *Mentions*, mentiez, mentoient.

Preterite.

Sing. *Mentis*, mentis, mentit, I lied, or did lie.
 Plur. *Mentimes*, mentîtes, mentirent.

Future.

Sing. *Mentirai*, mentiras, mentira, I shall, or will, lie.
 Plur. *Mentirons*, mentirez, mentiront.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Mentirois*, mentirois, mentiroit, I would, could,
 or should, lie.
 Plur. *Mentirions*, mentiriez, mentiroient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mens*, mente, lie thou.
 Plur. *Mentons*, mentez, mentent,

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que*
Mente, mentes, mente, that I may lie.
 Plur. *Mentions, mentiez, mentent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentisse, mentisses, mentit*, that I might lie.
 Plur. *Mentissions, mentissiez, mentissent*.

The compound of this verb is,

Dementir, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.



MOURIR, TO DIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mourir*, to die.
 Part. act. *Mourant*, dying.
 Part. pass. *Mort*, died.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Meurs, meurs, meurt*, I die, or am dying.
 Plur. *Mourons, mourez, meurent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mourois, mourois, mourait*, I was dying.
 Plur. *Mourions, mouriez, mouraient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Mourus, mourus, mourut*, I died.
 Plur. *Mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent*.

Future.

Sing. *Mourrai, mourras, mourra*, I shall, or will, die.
 Plur. *Mourrons, mourrez, mourront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Mourrois, mourrois, mourroit*, I should, could,
 or would, die.
 Plur. *Mourrions, mourriez, mourroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meurs, meure, die thou.*
 Plur. *Mourons, mourez, meurent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Meure, meures, meure, that I may die.*
 Plur. *Mourions, mouriez, meurent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mourusse, mourusses, mourût, that I might die.*
 Plur. *Mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.*

Se mourir, to be dying.



OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Offrir, to offer.*
 Part. act. *Offrant, offering.*
 Part. pass. *Offert, offered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Offre, offres, offre, I offer, or am offering.*
 Plur. *Offrons, offrez, offrent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Offrois, offrois, offroit, I did offer, or was offer-*
 Plur. *Offrions, offriez, offroient. ing.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Offris, offris, offrit, I offered, or did offer.*
 Plur. *Offrîmes, offrites, offrirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Offrirai, offriras, offrira, I shall, or will, offer.*
 Plur. *Offrirons, offrirez, offriront.*

Conditional

Conditional present.

Sing. *Offrirois, offrirois, offriroit*, I would, could, or
should, offer.

Plur. *Offri²ⁱrons, offririez, offriroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Offre, offre, offer thou*.

Plur. *Offrons, offrez, offrent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que Offre, offres, offre*, that I may offer.

Plur. *Offrions, offriez, offrent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Offrisse, offrisse, offrit*, that I might offer.

Plur. *Offrissions, offrissez, offrissent*.



OUIR, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say: ex.

J'ai oui dire que, I have heard that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*.



OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

Couvrir, to cover,

Recouvrir, to cover again,

Découvrir, { to discover,
 { to uncover,

is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY ;

And its compounds,

Départir, to depart, to *Repartir*, to set out again,
impart ; to reply ;

Se REPENTIR, TO REPENT ;

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL ;

And its compounds,

Consentir, to consent, to *Resentir*, to be sensible of,
agree ; to resent ;

Pressentir, to have a fore-
sight of ;

are conjugated like *MENTIR*.



EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away.
voir, v. venir, v.

— Avoid bad company. — He does not love your
compagnie, f.

sister because she lies. — If you forgive me this time,
parceque, c. fois, f.

I never will lie any more. — I cannot believe him,
pouvoir, v.

for he contradicts himself at every instant. — Tell me
car, c. instant, m. Dire, v.

what she has done to you ; but, above all, do not lie.
sur, p.

— If you do not behave better your mother will
se comporter, v.

die with grief. — Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh
de chagrin, m. à

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty. —
Août, m.

Were I in your place I would not offer her any money.
à place, f.

— Why do you not open your sister the door?
Pourquoi, adv. porte, f.

— Your brother was no sooner arrived in London
pluôt, adv. à

than I offered him my services. — Open the window.
fenêtre, f.

— I had heard you were going to Holland at the be-
com-

ginning of next month. — I hope you will ne-
mencement, m. espérer, v.

ver discover what I have told you. — Cover my hat
dire, v.

and put it upon that chair. — I will set out to-mor-
mettre, v. chaise, f.

row morning at seven (o'clock.) — Do not set out
heure, f.

without me. — Your sister repents much for having
de

sold her books. — Gather that pink, it smells char-
œillet, m. bien

mingly. — Her mother says she never will consent to
bon, adv.

it. — If you do not take care, you will repent of
prendre, v. garde, f.

your imprudence soon or late. — I should die satisf-
tôt, adv. tard, adv. con-

fied if I knew you were happy. — You soon
tent, adj. savoir, v. (by the subj.)

felt the effect of it. — My cousin set out from here
effet, m. ici, adv.

yesterday

yesterday morning at nine o'clock. — I offer you my
 house, it is at your service. — You may ^{rely}
maison, f. ^{pouvoir, v. compter, v.}
 upon her, she never will discover your secrets. — I ne-
^{secret, m.}
 ver will offer you my horse any more. — He will
^{cheval, m.}
 feel it in his turn when he (is) old.
^à ^{tour, m.} (by the fut.)



SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP ONE TO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Servir*, to serve.
 Part. act. *Servant*, serving.
 Part. pass. *Servi*, served.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sers*, *fers*, *sert*, I serve, or am serving.
 Plur. *Servons*, *servez*, *servent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Servois*, *servois*, *servoit*, I did serve, or was
 Plur. *Servions*, *serviez*, *servoient*. serving.

Preterite.

Sing. *Servis*, *servis*, *servit*, I did serve, or served.
 Plur. *Servîmes*, *servîtes*, *servirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Servirai*, *serviras*, *servira*, I shall, or will, serve.
 Plur. *Servirons*, *servirez*, *serviront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Servirois*, *servirois*, *serviroit*, I would, should,
 or could, serve.
 Plur. *Servirions*, *serviriez*, *serviroient*.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sers, serve, serve thou.*
 Plur. *Servons, servez, servent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que serve, serves, serve, that I may serve.*
 Plur. *Servions, serviez, servent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Servisse, servisses, servit, that I might serve.*
 Plur. *Servissions, servissiez, servissent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

Deffervir, to do an ill office, to clear a table.
Se servir, to make use of, to use.



SORTIR, TO GO OUT,
 is conjugated like *MENTIR*. *p 152*



SOUFFRIR, TO SUFFER,
 is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.



TENIR, TO HOLD.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tenir*, to hold.
 Part. act. *Tenant*, holding.
 Part. pass. *Tenu*, held.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Tiens, tiens, tient*, I hold, or am holding.
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent.*

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tenois, tenois, tenoit*, I did hold, or was holding.
 Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tenoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Tins, tins, tint*, I held, or did hold.
 Plur. *Tinmes, tintes, tinrent*.

Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will, hold.
 Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Tiendrais, tiendrais tiendrait*, I should, could,
 or would, hold.
 Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Tienne, tiennes, tienne*, that I may hold.
 Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tinssse, tinsses, tint*, that I might hold.
 Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

S'abstenir, to abstain.

Apartenir, to belong.

Contenir, to contain.

Detenir, to detain.

Entretenir, to keep, to entertain.

Maintenir, to maintain.

Obtenir, to obtain.

Retenir, to retain, to keep.

Soutenir, to maintain, to hold, to support.

TRES-

TRESSAILLIR, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.
 Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.
 Part. pass. *Tressailli*, started.

INDICATIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, I start.
 Plur. *Tressaillons*, *tressaillez*, *tressailent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillois*, *tressaillois*, *tressailloit*, I did start.
 Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressaillez*, *tressailloient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillis*, *tressaillis*, *tressaillit*, I started.
 Plur. *Tressaillimes*, *tressaillites*, *tressaillirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Tressaillirai*, *traissailiras*, *traissailira*, I shall,
 or will, start.
 Plur. *Tressaillirons*, *tressaillirez*, *tressailliront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Tressaillirois*, *tressaillirois*, *tressailliroit*, I should,
 would, &c. start.
 Plur. *Tressaillirions*, *tressailliriez*, *tressailliroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, that I may start.
 Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressaillez*, *tressailent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillisse*, *tressaillisses*, *tressaillit*, that I might
 start.
 Plur. *Tressaillissions*, *tressaillissiez*, *tressaillissent*.

SAILLIR,

SAILLIR, TO JUT, TO JET OUT, (term in architecture,) is conjugated as *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

N. B. *SAILLIR*, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquids,) is regular, and conjugated as *PUNIR*.



VENIR, TO COME, *sep 189*

And its compounds,

Convenir, to agree, to become, to fit, to suit,

Contrevenir, to infringe,

Devenir, to become,

Disconvenir, to disagree,

Intervenir, to intervene,

Parvenir, to attain to,

Prévenir, to prevent, to prejudice, to anticipate, to prepossess,

Provenir, to proceed,

Revenir, to come back, to return,

Se souvenir, to remember, to remind,*

Se ressouvenir, to recollect,

Subvenir, to relieve, to assist,

Survenir, to befall, to happen unexpectedly, to come to,

Are conjugated like *TENIR*. *p 189.*



VEtir, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *REvetir*, TO INVEST WITH, will be given in lieu of it.

INFI-

* When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

Faites moi souvenir de passer chez votre tante, Remind me to call upon your aunt.

Où, je vous en ferai souvenir, Yes, I will remind you of it.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest.Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.Part. pass. *Revêtu*, invested.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revêts*, *revêt*, I invest.Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtois*, *revêtois*, *revêtoit*, I did invest.Plur. *Revétions*, *revétiez*, *revêtoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtis*, *revêtis*, *revêtit*, I invested, or didPlur. *Revêtimes*, *revêtites*, *revêtirent*. invest.

Future.

Sing. *Revêtirai*, *revêtiras*, *revêtira*, I shall, or will,Plur. *Revétirons*, *revétirez*, *revétiront*. invest.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Revétirois*, *revétirois*, *revétiroit*, I should, would;Plur. *Revétirions*, *revétiriez*, *revétiroient*. &c. invest.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revête*, invest thou.Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que* *Revête*, *revêtes*, *revête*, that I may invest.Plur. *Revétions*, *revétiez*, *revêtent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revétisse*, *revétisses*, *revêtît*, that I might in-Plur. *Revétissions*, *revétissiez*, *revétissent*. vest.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend, Mr. A——, does not serve me well.
ami, m.

— Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb? —
morceau, m. agneau, m.

We would serve him with all our heart if we could. —
pouvoir, v.

I shall go out in half an hour. — If we go to-day
aujourd'hui, adv.

to Richmond we will make use of your coach. — My
carrosse, m.

sister went out this morning at nine o'clock and is not
matin, m.

yet returned. — Nobody knows what we suffered in our
savoir, v.

last voyage. — If I were as ill as you I would
voyage, m. malade, adj.

not go out of my room. — Why do not you
chambre, f. Pourquoi, adv.

serve your friends, since you may do it? — The
puisque, c. pouvoir, v.

more we are above others, the more it becomes
au dessus de, p.

us to be modest and humble. — My aunt and I came
tante, f.

yesterday to see you, but you were not at home. —
voir, v. logis, m.

I hope you will keep your word and come to-
espérer, v. parole, f. de-

morrow. — I assure you Mr. R——'s father holds
main, adv. assurer, v.

the

the first rank in the town. — We were coming to
rang, m. ville, f.

see you, but you have anticipated all my designs. —

She leapt for joy when she saw her. — At last she has
*de Enfin, adv. **

agreed to pay her an annual pension of twenty pounds.
de

— Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. —
Vendredi, m.

This house will belong to me after her death. — You
après, p. mort, f.

will obtain leave to go out another time if you
permission, f. de fois, f.

come back soon. — This box contains all my jew-
bientôt, adv. boîte, f. bi-

els. — I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the family.
joux, m. pl.

— Who knows whether they will remember it or
savoir, v. si, c.

not? — Your illness proceeds from a great heat. —
maladie, f. chaleur, f.

The first time you come to see me I will keep
(by the fut.) voir, v.

you two or three days. — Mr. B. desired me to tell you
jour, m. prier, v. de

that he will not come back to-day. — We would cer-
cer-

tainly have come back yesterday had we had
*tainement, adv. * hier, adv.*

time. — You will become a great man if you conti-
grand, adj. conti-

nue to study with the same assiduity. — He would
nuer, v. de assiduité, f.

* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses.

have come to see us last week if it had not rained. —
semaine, f. plu, p. p.

The first time I go out remind me to call on
fois, f. (by the fut.) de passer, v. chez, p.

your brother. — Do not go out to-day, you will suffer
 much if you do. — I should not suffer (so much)
beaucoup, adv. faire, v. tant, adv.

if it were fine weather. — Why do not you abstain
faisoit

from drinking. — You may set out this morning,
boire, v. pouvoir, v.

but remember to come back at night. — Were I in
de ce soir, m.

your place I would detain him here a little longer. —
place, f. long-tems, adv.

I do not think that colour suits your sister. — When
croire Quand, adv.

will she return from the country? — She wrote she
campagne, f.

would come next Saturday if the weather were fine.
tems, m.



VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Assoir*, to sit down.
 Part. act. *Assayant*, sitting down.
 Part. pass. *Assis*, sat down (or seated).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied*, I sit down.
 Plur. *Asséyons, asséyez, asséyent*.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Asséyois, asséyois, asséyoit*, I did sit, or was sitting,
 Plur. *Asséyions, asséyiez, asséyoient*. down.

Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit*, I sat down.
 Plur. *Assîmes, assîtes, assirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Asséyerai, asséyeras, asséyera*, I shall, or will, sit
 Plur. *Asséyerons, asséyerez, asséyeront*. down.

Conditional present

Sing. *Asséyerois, asséyerois, asséyeroit*, I should, would,
 or could, sit down.
 Plur. *Asséyerions, asséyeriez, asséyeroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assied, asséye*, sit down.
 Plur. *Asséyons, asséyez, asséyent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Asséye, asséyes, asséye*, that I may sit down.
 Plur. *Asséyions, asséyez, asséyent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Assisse, assissis, assît*, that I might sit down.
 Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent*.

The compound of this verb is,
Se rasseoir, to sit down again.

S E O I R, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO
 SIT, the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the pre-
 sent of its infinitive mood; and in its other tenses is
 conjugated as follows:

Part. act. *Séant*, sitting well, sitting, or becoming.
 Part. pass. *Sis*, never used but in the sense of situated,
 or lying.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

- Present. *Il sied, ils sient*, It becomes, they become, &c.
 Imperfect. *Il s'oyoit, ils s'oyoient*, It was becoming, &c.
 Preterite wanting.
 Future. *Il siera, ils s'ieront*, It or they will become.
 Cond. pres. *Il s'ieroit, ils s'ieroient*, It or they would become.

The other tenses are never used.

SURSEIOR, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant*.

Part. pass. *Surfis*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons.

Imperfect.

Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.

Preterite.

Je surfis, &c. nous surfîmes, &c.

Future.

Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.

Conditional present.

Je surseirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je surseoye, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.

Imperfect.

Que je surfisse, &c. que nous surfissions, &c.

DECHOIR,

DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.

Part. act. wanting.

Part. pass. *Déchu*, decayed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Déchois, déchois, déchoit*, I decay.Plur. *Déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient*.

Imperfect is wanting.

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchus, déchus, déchut*, I decayed, or did de-Plur. *Déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurënt*. cay.

Future.

Sing. *Décherrai, décherras, décherra*, I shall, or will,Plur. *Décherrons, décherrez, décherront*. decay.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Décherrois, décherrois, décherroit*, I should,
would, or could, decay.Plur. *Décherriens, décherriez, décherroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que déchoie, que déchoies, que déchoie*, that I may decay.Plur. *Déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Déchusse, déchusses, déchût*, that I might decay.Plur. *Déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent*.*CHOIR*, the primitive of the above verb, is obsolete.*ECHOIR*, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like *DECHOIR*. Its part. act. is *échéant*.

MOU-

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.Part. pass. *Mu*, moved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Meus*, *meus*, *meut*, I move.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mouvois*, *mouvois*, *mouvoit*, I did move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *mouvoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Mus*, *mus*, *mut*, I moved, or did move.Plur. *Mâmes*, *mûtes*, *murent*.

Future.

Sing. *Mourrai*, *mourras*, *mourra*, I shall, or will,Plur. *Mourrons*, *mouvrez*, *mourront*. move.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Mouvrais*, *mouvrais*, *mouvrait*, I should, could,
or would, move.Plur. *Mourrions*, *mourriez*, *mouvraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meus*, *meuve*, move thou.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *meuve*, *meuves*, *meuve*, that I may move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *meuvent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Musse*, *musses*, *mât*, that I might move.Plur. *Mussions*, *mussiez*, *mussent*.The compound of this verb is,
Emouvoir, to stir up, to move.

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.
 Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.
 Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Puis*, or *peux*, *peux*, *peut*, I am able, I can,
 Plur. *Pouvons*, *pouvez*, *peuvent*. or may.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvois*, *pouvais*, *pouvait*, I was able, or I could.
 Plur. *Pouvions*, *pouviez*, *pouvoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pus*, *pus*, *put*, I was able, or I could.
 Plur. *Pûmes*, *pûtes*, *purent*.

Future.

Sing. *Pourrai*, *pourras*, *pourra*, I shall, or will, be
 Plur. *Pourrons*, *pourrez*, *pourront*. able.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Pourrois*, *pourrois*, *pourroit*, I should be able,
 I could, or might.
 Plur. *Pourrions*, *pourriez*, *pourroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Puisse*, *puisses*, *puisse*, that I may be able, or
 Plur. *Pussions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*. I may.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pusse*, *pusse*, *pût*, that I might be able, or I
 Plur. *Pussions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*. might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express
 an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of do-
 ing

ing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb: ex.

Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval si vous en avez besoin d'un, I can sell you a good horse if you want one.

Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures, You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

Puissiez-vous être heureux, May you be happy.

Could is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present; and *might* by the last tense: ex.

Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire, I could not do better.

Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée. He could not come with us last week.

Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui, You might mistake as well as he.

Could or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir, I could have told it to you last night.

Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours, You might have done it in three days.



SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Savoir*, to know.

Part. act. *Sachant*, knowing.

Part. pass. *Su*, known.

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sais, sais, sait*, I know.Plur. *Savons, savez, savent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Savois, savois, savoit*, I did know, or knew.Plur. *Savions, saviez, savoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Sus, sus, fut*, I knew, or did know.Plur. *Sûmes, sûtes, surent*.

Future.

Sing. *Saurai, sauras, saura*, I shall, or will, know.Plur. *Saurons, saurez, sauront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Saurois,* saurois, sauroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Saurions, sauriez, sauroient*. *could, know.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sache, sache*, know thou.Plur. *Sachons, sachez, sachent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*, *Sache,† saches, sache*, that I may know.Plur. *Sachions, sachiez, sachent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suffe, fusses, fût*, that I might know.Plur. *Suffions, fussiez, fussent*.

VALOIR,

* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often englished by *cannot* : ex.*Je ne saurois vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.*† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative ; but it is never to be used without the negation *ne*, and most commonly in answering a question : ex.*Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie ? Will the king go to the play ?**Pas que je sache, Not that I know of.*

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Valoir*, to be worth.
 Part. act. *Valant*, being worth.
 Part. pass. *Valu*, been worth.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaux*, *vaut*, I am worth.
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *valent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Valois*, *valois*, *valoit*, I was worth.
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *valoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Valus*, *valus*, *valut*, I was worth.
 Plur. *Valûmes*, *valûtes*, *valurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Vaudrai*, *vaudras*, *vaudra*, I shall, or will, be worth.
 Plur. *Vaudrons*, *vaudrez*, *vaudront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Vaudrois*, *vaudrois*, *vaudroit*, I should, &c. be worth.
 Plur. *Vaudrions*, *vaudriez*, *vaudroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaille*, be thou worth.
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *vailent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Vaille*, *vailles*, *vaille*, that I may be worth.
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *vailent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Valusse*, *valusses*, *valût*, that I might be worth.
 Plur. *Valussions*, *valussiez*, *valussent*.

The compound of this verb is,

Prévaloir, to prevail, which is conjugated as *VALOIR*, but we say much better in the present tense of the subjunctive,

Que je préval-e, es, e; ions, iez, ent.



VOIR, TO SEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Voir*, to see.
Part. act. *Voyant*, seeing.
Part. pass. *Vu*, seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.
Sing. *Vois, vois, voit*, I see.
Plur. *Voyons, voyez, voient.* o

Imperfect.
Sing. *Voyois, voyois, voyoit*, I did see.
Plur. *Voyions, voyiez, voyoient.*

Preterite.
Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I saw, or did see.
Plur. *Vimes, vîtes, virent.*

Future.
Sing. *Verrai, verras, verra*, I shall, or will, see.
Plur. *Verrons, verrez, verront.*

Conditional present.
Sing. *Verrois, verrois, verroit*, I should, &c. see.
Plur. *Verrions, verriez, verroient.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vois, voye*, see thou.
Plur. *Voyons, voyez, voient.* o

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Voye, voyes, voye*, that I may see.
 Plur. *Voyions, voyiez, voient.* *o*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Visse, visses, vit*, that I might see.
 Plur. *Vissions, vissiez, vissent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of. *Prévoir*, to foresee.
Revoir, to see again. *Pourvoir*, to provide.

PREVOIR differs from *VOIR* in the future : ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira.*
 Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront.* And,

Conditional present.

Sing. *Prévoirais, prévoirais, prévoirait.*
 Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiraient.*

POURVOIR makes in the preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*
 Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*
 Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional present.

Sing. *Pourvoirais, pourvoirais, pourvoirait.*
 Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*
 Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

VOULOIR,

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vouloir*, to be willing.
 Part. act. *Voulant*, being willing.
 Part. pass. *Voulu*, been willing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, vent*, I am willing, or I will.
 Plur. *Voulons, voulez, veulent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois, voulois, vouloit*, I was willing, or I
 Plur. *Voulions, vouliez, vouloient* would.

Preterite.

Sing. *Voulus, voulus, voulut*, I was willing, or I
 Plur. *Voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent* would.

Future.

Sing. *Voudrai, voudras, voudra*, I shall be willing, or
 Plur. *Voudrons, voudrez, voudront* I will.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Voudrais, voudrais, voudroit*, I should be wil-
 ling, or I would.
 Plur. *Voudrions, voudriez, voudroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Veuille, veuilles, veuille*, that I may be willing.
 Plur. *Voulions, vouliez, veuillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulusse, voulusses, voulût*, that I might be wil-
 Plur. *Voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent* ling.

When the words *will* or *would* express a will, choice,
 or deliberation, in the agent, and can be turned by *choose*

or chose, *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb : ex.

<i>Je veux y aller et lui parler</i>	<i>I will, or chose to, go there</i>
<i>moi-même,</i>	<i>and speak to him myself;</i>
<i>Il ne veut pas manger,</i>	<i>He will not eat, or does</i>
	<i>not chose to eat;</i>

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present : ex.

<i>Si je voulois, je vous dirois</i>	<i>If I would, or chose, I could</i>
<i>où elle demeure,</i>	<i>tell you where she lives.</i>
<i>Il voulut absolument partir</i>	<i>He would absolutely, or ab-</i>
<i>bier,</i>	<i>solutely chose to, set out</i>
	<i>yesterday.</i>
<i>Que voudriez-vous que je</i>	<i>What would you have me</i>
<i>fisse ?</i>	<i>do ?</i>

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the preterpluperfect or conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

<i>Si j'avois voulu lui parler,</i>	<i>If I would have spoken to</i>
	<i>him, or had I chosen to</i>
	<i>speak to him.</i>
<i>Vous n'auriez pas voulu</i>	<i>You would not have taken</i>
<i>prendre les armes, si, &c.</i>	<i>up arms, if, &c.</i>
<i>Nous aurions pu l'arrêter si</i>	<i>We could have stopped</i>
<i>nous eussions voulu,</i>	<i>him if we would, or had</i>
	<i>chosen.</i>

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir ? — You
Pourquoi, adv. *monseigneur, m.*

come to see me very seldom. — Let us sit down upon
rarement, adv.

the

the grass. — Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot
herbe, f. faire, v. tant, adv.

learn my lesson. — Do you know what has hap-
apprendre, v. arri-

pened to her? — As soon as he saw he could not
ver, v. Aussitôt que, c.

make her hear reason he went away. — See the
entendre, v. s'en aller, v.

letter she wrote me. — We will not sit down till
écrire, v. que ne

you have determined to set out. — The first time I saw
se déterminer, v. à fois, f.

your sister she pleased me. — I would sit down upon
plaire, v.

the grass if it were not so damp. — Mrs. P. desired
humide, adj. prier, v.

me to tell you she could not come to see you this
dire, v.

week, but she would certainly come at the be-
semaine, f. certainement, adv. com-

ginning of next month. — Cannot you lend me
mencement, m. mois, m. prêter, v.

three or four guineas? — If I would, I soon could
guinée, f. bientôt, adv.

know whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. —
si, c. tante, f.

This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but its
drap, m.

colour becomes you very well. — Do not you see the

defects of it? — When you know your lesson,
défaut, m. (by the fut.)

come and repeat it to me. — Did you not know that
répéter, v.

Mr. A. was to marry Miss B. ? — I knew it, but
épouser, v. mais, c.

I was not willing to tell him of it. — I believe you
parler, v.

could learn your lessons much better if you
apprendre, v. beaucoup, adv.

would. — Could you lend me your horse for two or
prêter, v.

three days ? — If your brother come with me, will he
jour, m. avec, p.

be able to follow me ? — Could they see so great an
suivre, v.

alteration without being vexed (at it ?) — He is
changement, m. sans, p. fâché, p. p. en, pro.

incapable of commanding others who cannot command
 himself. — His best coat was not worth two pence
habit, m. sou, m.

when he arrived from Germany. — We saw them yes-
Allemagne, f. hi-

terday. — They did not foresee what would happen to
er, adv. arriver, v.

them. — Do you know where Miss B. lives ? — Yes,
où, adv. demeurer, v.

I do (know it,) and I see her every day at her window.
fenêtre, f.

— Why will you not tell it me ? — She would marry
épouser, v.

him in spite of all her relations. — It is for that
en, p. dépit, m. parent, m. Ce, pro.

reason her father says he never will see her again. —
dire, v.

All the finest talents reunited are not worth a virtue. —

Severity and rigour may excite fear, but not love. —
Sévérité, f. rigueur, f. crainte, f. amour, m.

You

You saw with what goodness she received him. — I
bonté, f. recevoir, v.

would not tell her what I think about it for fear of
de, p.

giving her any subject of complaint. — If you foresee the
plainte, f.

danger, why do you not endeavour to avoid it? —
tâcher, v. de éviter, v.

They were willing to withdraw, but your brother
se retirer, v.

hindered them (from it) and desired them to sit down
empêcher, v. prier, v. de

again. — You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you
parler, v. quand, adv.

please, but I may not take that liberty. — He
vouloir, v. prendre, v.

would not sell me these buckles under 4 four
vendre, v. boucle, f. à moins de, p.

guineas. — I will not see your brother (any more.) —
plus, adv.

Every body thinks that if they would have pursued
pour suivre, v.

the enemy briskly they might have ended the
vigoureusement, adv. finir, v.

war on that day. — Should we see ourselves reduced
réduire, v.

to so great difficulties? — If I would have believed
croire, v.

him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy with
de

him. — He could have done his work in less than
faire, v. en, p.

ten minutes if he had not amused himself in reading.
s'amuser, v. à lire, v.

— If

— If you want that book you may take it, it is at
 avoir besoin de à
 your service. — We might have danced till
 jusqu'à, p.
 (twelve o'clock) if that had not happened. — Oh! my
 minuit, m.
 children, may you be happy, and never bewail the
 heureux, adj. *pleurer*, v.
 moment of your birth! — I spoke to her (a long while,)
 naissance, f. *long tems*, adv.
 but could not persuade her to come with me. — May
 de
 I go and see him? — Yes, but come back as soon as
 aussitôt que, c.
 you (can.)
 (by the fut.)



VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOLVRE, TO ABSOLVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.
 Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.
 Part. pass. *Absous*, absolved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolvoit*, I did absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvoient*.

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai, absoudras, absoudra*, I shall, or will,
 Plur. *Absoudrons, absoudrez, absoudront.* absolve.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Absoudrois, absoudrois, absoudroit*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Absoudrions, absoudriez, absoudroient.* absolve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous, absolve, absolve thou.*
 Plur. *Absolveons, absolvez, absolvent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que* *Absolve, absolves, absolve*, that I may absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvions, absolviez, absolvent.*

Imperfect is wanting.

SOUDRE, TO SOLVE, the primitive of this verb, is only used in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

Dissoudre, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

Dissoudre has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.
Résoudre has its participle passive, *résolu*: its preterite;

Sing. *Résolus, résclus, résolut.*
 Plur. *Résolûmes, résolutes, résolurent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Résolusse, résolusses, résolût.*
 Plur. *Résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.*



ASTREINDRE, TO OBLIGE.

ATTEINDRE, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,
 and **AVEINDRE**, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,
 are conjugated as **GRAINDRE**.

The three above verbs grow obsolete.

BATTRE,

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.
 Part. act. *Battant*, beating.
 Part. pass. *Battu*, beaten.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.
 Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois*, *battois*, *battois*, I did beat, or was beating.
 Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I did beat, or beat.
 Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîtes*, *battirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battrai*, I shall, or will, beat.
 Plur. *Battrons*, *battrez*, *battront*.

Conditional present

Sing. *Battrois*, *battrois*, *battrois*, I should, &c. beat.
 Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *batte*, beat thou.
 Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Batte*, *bâtes*, *batte*, that I may beat.
 Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.
 Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*.

The compounds of this verb are :

Abattre, to beat down. *Rabattre*, to abate, to beat
Combattre, to fight. down.
Debattre to debate, to *Rebattre*, to beat again,
struggle.



BOIRE, TO DRINK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.
Part. act. *Buvant*, drinking.
Part. pass. *Bu*, drunk.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bois*, *bois*, *boit*, I drink, or am drinking.
Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Buvois*, *buvois*, *buvoit*, I did drink, or was
Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *buvoient*. drinking.

Preterite.

Sing. *Bus*, *bus*, *but*, I drank, or did drink.
Plur. *Bûmes*, *bûtes*, *burent*.

Future.

Sing. *Boirai*, *boiras*, *boira*, I shall, or will, drink.
Plur. *Buirons*, *boirez*, *boiront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Bairois*, *biairois*, *biairoit*, I should, &c. drink.
Plur. *Bairions*, *biairiez*, *biairoient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bois*, *boive*, drink thou.
Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Boive*, *boives*, *boive*, that I may drink.
Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *boivent*.

Imperfect,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Busse, busse, bût*, that I might drink.Plur. *Bussions, bussiez, bussent*.*CEINDRE*, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to enclose, to encompass, are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*CIRCONCIRE*, TO CIRCUMCISE,

Is conjugated like *CONFIRE*, but has its participle passive ending in *is* instead of *it*.

*CONCLURE*, TO CONCLUDE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conclure*, to conclude.Part. act. *Concluant*, concluding.Part. pass. *Conclu*, concluded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I conclude.Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Concluois, concluois, concluoit*, I did conclude.Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I did conclude, orPlur. *Conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent* concluded.

Future.

Sing. *Conclurai, concluras, conclura*, I shall, or will,Plur. *Conclurons, conclurez, concluront* conclude.

Conditional

Conditional present.

Sing. *Conclurois, conclurois, concluroit*, I should, &c.
conclude.

Plur. *Conclurons, concluriez, concluroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conclus, conclue*, conclude thou.

Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Conclue, conclus, conclue*, that I may conclude:

Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Conclusse, conclusses, conclût*, that I might con-

Plur. *Concluissions, conclussiez, conclussent*. conclude.



CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.

Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.

Part. pass. *Conduit*, conducted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Couduis, conduis, conduit*, I lead, &c.

Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisois, conduisois, conduisoit*, I did lead.

Plur. *Conduissions, conduissiez, conduisoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Conduisis, conduisis, conduisit*, I led.

Plur. *Conduisimes, conduisites, conduisirent*.

U

Future.

Future.

Sing. *Conduirai, conduiras, conduira*, I shall, or will,
 Plur. *Conduirons, conduirez, conduiront.* lead.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Conduirois, conduirois, conduiroit*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Conduirions, conduiriez, conduiroient.* lead.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conduis, conduise*, lead thou.
 Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Conduise, conduises, conduise, that I may lead.
 Plur. *Conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisit*, that I might
 Plur. *Conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent.* lead.

Its compound is,
Reconduire, to lead again.



CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Confire*, to preserve.
 Part. act. *Confisant*, preserving.
 Part. pass. *Confit*, preserved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Confis, confis, confit*, I preserve.
 Plur. *Confisons, confisez, confisent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Confissois, confissois, confissoit*, I did preserve.
 Plur. *Confissions, confissiez, confissoient.*

Preterite.

Preterite.

Sing. *Confis, confis, confit*, I preserved.Plur. *Confimes, confites, confirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Confirai, confiras, confira*, I shall, or will, preserve.Plur. *Confirons, confirez, confirent*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Confirois, confirois, confiroit*, I should, &c. preserve.Plur. *Confirions, confiriez, confiroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis, confise*, preserve thou.Plur. *Confisons, confisez, confisent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que Confise, confises, confise*, that I may preserve.Plur. *Confissions, confissiez, confissent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Confisse, confisses, confit*, that I might preserve.Plur. *Confissions, confissiez, confissent*.

CONNOITRE, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED
WITH, *somebody*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Connoître*, to know.Part. act. *Connoissant*, knowing.Part. pass. *Connu*, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Connois, connois, connoit*, I know.Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois, connoissois, connoissoit*, I did know.Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Connus, connus, connut*, I knew.Plur. *Connûmes, connûtes, connurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Connoîtrai, connoîtras, connoîtra*, I shall, &c.Plur. *Connoîtrons, connoîtrez, connoîtront*. know.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Connoîtrois, connoîtrois, connoîtroit*, I should, &c. know.Plur. *Connoîtrions, connoîtriez, connoîtroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connois, connoisse*, know thou.Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Connoisse, connoisses, connoisse*, that I may know.Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Connusse, connusses, connût*, that I might know.Plur. *Connussions, connussiez, connussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

Méconnoître, to take for a- *Reconnoître*, to acknow-
nother. ledge, to know again.**CONSTRUIRE**, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,
is conjugated as **CONDUIRE**.**CONTRAINdre**, TO CONSTRAIN, TO COMPEL,
TO FORCE,
is conjugated as **CRaindre**.

COU-

COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Coudre*, to sew.Part. act. *Cousant*, sewing.Part. pass. *Cousu*, sewed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Couds*, *couds*, *coud*, I sew, or am sewing.Plur. *Cousons*, *cousez*, *cousent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cousois*, *cousois*, *cousoit*, I did sew, or was sewing.Plur. *Cousions*, *cousiez*, *cousoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Cousis*, *cousis*, *cousit*, I sewed.Plur. *Cousîmes*, *cousîtes*, *cousirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Coudrai*, *coudras*, *coudra*, I shall, or will, sew.Plur. *Coudrons*, *coudrez*, *coudront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Coudrois*, *coudrois*, *coudroit*, I should, &c. sew.Plur. *Coudrions*, *coudriez*, *coudroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Couds*, *couse*, sew thou.Plur. *Cousons*, *cousez*, *cousent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Coufe*, *coufes*, *coufe*, that I may sew.Plur. *Coufions*, *coufiez*, *coufent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Coufisse*, *coufisses*, *coufit*, that I might sew.Plur. *Coufissions*, *coufissiez*, *coufissent*.

Its compounds are,

Découdre, to unsew. *Recoudre*, to sew again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do you know Mr. A. ? — Yes, we know him
Oui, adv.
 very well ; and, though he be rich, I assure you he is
 not the more charitable for it. — He has been beaten
 (soundly.) — If you knew the question, you would
comme il faut. *question, f.*
 resolve it in two words. — I will soon conclude, if you
not, m.
 think as your brother does. — We should beat
comme, adv. *en*
 them if they did not fight in their own country. —
propre, adj.
 Do not beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. —
en *faute, f.*
 You would never see him again if you knew him. —
 Mr. R. told me some time ago that he would build a
 ship on a new plan. — What will you drink ? — I will
 drink nothing but water. — Do not drink so much. —
ne que *tant, adv.*
 If your father were here you would not drink (at all.)
du tout.
 — Let us fill our glasses and drink our friends health.
verre, m. *santé, f.*
 — Come with us, we shall see whether she will know
si, c.
 you again or not. — If you knew her, I am certain she
 would please you. — After tea we conducted the la-
plaire, v. *thé, m.*
 dies

dies to the concert. — When they had explained to us

all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the
se passer, v. *avoir*

wrong.) — Unsew that gown. — I will sew it to-mor-
tort.

row. — Why do not you preserve some fruits this year?
année, f.

— He could not know you if he saw you now. —
à présent, adv.

Did you ask him whether he were acquainted with any
fr, c.

of these ladies? — You will force your father to punish
à

you if you do not behave better. — The last time
se comporter, v.

we went to Vauxhall we drank three bottles of Cham-

paign wine. — Thence we concluded you could
De là, adv.

not come to-day. — I know nobody in this neighbour-
voisi-

hood. — I knew your sister again as soon as I saw her.
nage, m.

— Though you should take three dozen of them I
Quand, c. *douzaine, f.*

could not abate a farthing. — The wind was so great
liard, m. *vent, m.*

that it has thrown down one or two trees in our gar-
den.

CRAINDRE,

CRAINdre, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID.**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.
 Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.
 Part. pass. *Craint*, feared.

INDICATIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or was
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*. afraid,

Preterite.

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.
 Plur. *Craignimes*, *craignites*, *craignirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Craindrai*, *craindras*, *craindra*, I shall, or will,
 Plur. *Craindrons*, *craindrez*, *craindront*. fear.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Craindrois*, *craindrois*, *craindroit*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Craindrions*, *craindriez*, *craindroient*. fear.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crains*, *craigne*, fear thou.
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Craigne*, *craines*, *craigne*, that I may fear.
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignisse*, *craignisses*, *craignit*, that I might
 Plur. *Craignissions*, *craignissiez*, *craignissent*. fear.

CROIRE,

C R O I R E, TO BELIEVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Croire*, to believe.
 Part. act. *Croyant*, believing.
 Part. pass. *Cru*, believed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Crois*, *crois*, *croit*, I believe.
 Plur. *Croyons*, *croyez*, *croient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Croyois*, *croyois*, *croyoit*, I did believe.
 Plur. *Croyions*, *croyiez*, *croyoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Crus*, *crus*, *crut*, I believed.
 Plur. *Crûmes*, *crûtes*, *crurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Croirai*, *croiras*, *croira*, I shall, or will, believe.
 Plur. *Croirons*, *croirez*, *croiront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Croirois*, *croirois*, *croiroit*, I should, &c. believe.
 Plur. *Croirions*, *croiriez*, *croiroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crois*, *croye*, believe thou.
 Plur. *Croyons*, *croyez*, *croient*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Croie*, *croies*, *croie*, that I may believe.
 Plur. *Croyons*, *croyez*, *croient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Crusse*, *crusses*, *crût*, that I might believe.
 Plur. *Crussions*, *crussiez*, *crussent*.

CROI-

CROITRE, TO GROW,

And its compounds,

Accroître, to accrue, *Recroître*, to grow again,
Décroître, to decrease, to
grow less,

are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.**CUIRE**, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, *often englished by*
TO DO,and its compound, *Recuire*, to boil again,

DEDUIRE, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,
and **DETRUIRE**, TO DESTROY,

are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.**DIRE**, TO SAY, TO TELL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dire*, to say.
Part. act. *Disant*, saying.
Part. pass. *Dit*, said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I say, or am saying.
Plur. *Disans*, *dites*,* *disent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Disois*, *disois*, *disoit*, I did say, or was saying.
Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I did say, or said.
Plur. *Dimes*, *dites*, *dirent*.

Future.

Future.

Sing. *Dirai, diras, dira*, I shall, or will, say.Plur. *Dirons, direz, diront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Dirois, dirois, droit*, I should, &c. say.Plur. *Dirions, diriez, diroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dis, dis*, say thou.Plur. *Disons, dites, disent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Disse, dises, dise, that I may say.Plur. *Dissions, dissiez, dissent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Disse, disses, dit*, that I might say.Plur. *Dissions, dissiez, dissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

Contredire, to contradict. *Interdire*, to interdict, to*Se dedire*, to unsay, to re- forbid.

tract, to recant.

Prédire, to foretell.*Médire*, to slander, to *Redire*, to say, or tell a-
speak ill. gain.*Maudire*, to curse.

* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive,) make *isez* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb: ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent, &c.*



E C R I R E, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing.Part. pass. *Ecrit*, written.

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Ecris, écris, écrit*, I write, or am writing.Plur. *Ecrivons, écrivez, écrivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivois, écrivois, écrivait*, I did write, or wasPlur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écrivoient*. writing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Ecrivis, écrivis, écrivit*, I wrote, or did write.Plur. *Ecrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Ecrirai, écriras, écrira*, I shall, or will, write.Plur. *Ecrirons, écrivrez, écriront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Ecrirois, écrirois, écrirait*, I should, &c. write.Plur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écriraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ecris, écrive*, write thou.Plur. *Ecrivons, écrivez, écrivent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que écrive, écrives, écrive*, that I may write.Plur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écrivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît*, that I might write.Plur. *Ecrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

Décrire, to describe.*Inscrire*, to inscribe.*Prescrire*, to prescribe.*Proscrire*, to proscribe, to
outlaw.*Souscrire*, to subscribe.*Transcrire*, to transcribe.

ENDUIRE, TO DO OVER,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.



ETEINDRE, TO PUT OUT,
is conjugated like *CRAINDRE*.



EXCLURE, TO EXCLUDE,
is conjugated like *CONCLURE*.

Its participle passive is *exclus*.



FAIRE, TO MAKE, TO DO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire*, to make.

Part. act. *Faisant*, making.

Part. pass. *Fait*, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fais, fais, fait*, I make, or am making.

Plur. *Faisons, faites, font*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Faisois, faisois, faisoit*, I did make, or was making.

Plur. *Faisions, faisiez, faisoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Fis, fis, fit*, I made, or did make.

Plur. *Fîmes fîtes, firent*.

Future.

Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera*, I shall, or will, make.

Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront*.

X

Conditional

Conditional present

Sing. *Ferois, ferois, feroit*, I should, &c. make.Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais, fasse*, make thou.Plur. *Faisons, faites, fassent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que Fasse, fasses, fasse*, that I may make.Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fisse, fisses, fit*, that I might make.Plur. *Fissions, fissiez, fissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

Contrefaire, to counterfeit, *Refaire*, to do, or make
to mimic. up, again.*Défaire*, to undo. *Redéfaire*, to undo again.*Se défaire*, to get rid of, *Satisfaire*, to satisfy.to part with. *Surfaire*, to exact, to ask
too much.*FEINDRE*, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE,
TO PRETEND,is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.*FRIRE*, TO FRY.This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated: ex.*Faites frire ce poisson*, Fry that fish.Its participle passive is *frit*, fried.

IN-

INDUIRE, TO INDUCE,
INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,
 and *INTRODUIRE*, TO INTRODUCE,
 are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.



JOINDRE, TO JOIN,
 And its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,
 are conjugated like *CRAINDRE*.



LIRE, TO READ.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Lire*, to read.
 Part. act. *Lisant*, reading.
 Part. pass. *Lu*, read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Lis*, *lis*, *lit*, I read, or am reading.
 Plur. *Lisons*, *lisez*, *lisent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Lisois*, *lisois*, *lisoit*, I did read, or was reading.
 Plur. *Lisions*, *lisiez*, *lisoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Lus*, *lus*, *lut*, I did read, or read.
 Plur. *Lûmes*, *lûtes*, *lurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Lirai*, *liras*, *lira*, I shall, or will, read.
 Plur. *Lirons*, *lirez*, *liront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Lirois*, *lirais*, *lirait*, I should, would, &c. read.
 Plur. *Lirions*, *liriez*, *liraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Lis, life, read thou.*Plur. *Lisons, lisez, lisent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
*Lise, lifes, life, that I may read.*Plur. *Lissions, lissiez, lisent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Lusse, lusses, lût, that I might read.*Plur. *Lussions, lussiez, lussent.*

Its compounds are,

Elire, to elect. Relire, to read again.

LUIRE, TO SHINE,

And its compound, *Reluire*, to glitter,Are conjugated as *CONDUIRE*; but take no *t* at the end of their participle passive: ex. *Lui*, shined.

METTRE, TO PUT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mettre*, to put.Part. act. *Mettant*, putting.Part. pass. *Mis*, put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Mets, mets, met*, I put, or am putting.Plur. *Mettons, mettez, mettent.*

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mettois, mettois, mettoit*, I did put, or was put-
 Plur. *Mettions, mettiez, mettoient*. ting.

Preterite.

Sing. *Mis, mis, mit*, I did put, or put.
 Plur. *Mimes, mîtes, mirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Mettrai, mettras, mettra*, I shall, or will, put.
 Plur. *Mettrons, mettrez, mettront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Mettrois, mettrois, mettroit*, I should, would,
 Plur. *Mettrions, mettriez, mettroient*. &c. put.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mets, mette*, put thou.
 Plur. *Mettons, mettez, mettent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Mette, mettes, mette*, that I may put.
 Plur. *Mettions, mettiez, mettent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Missé, missés, mit*, that I might put.
 Plur. *Missions, missiez, missent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Admettre</i> , to admit.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise.*
<i>Compromettre</i> , to compro- mise.	<i>Remettre</i> , to deliver up, to put back again, to re- collect, to put off.
<i>Demettre</i> , to turn out, to remove.	<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit.
<i>Se remettre de</i> , to resign.	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit.
<i>Omettre</i> , to omit.	

* The participle of this verb (promising) when used
 adjectively, and expressing the mental qualities of some-
 body, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *promet-*

toit beaucoup, or dont il y a, or avoit beaucoup à espérer:
ex.

Majer A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, or dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer, Major A. was a very promising officer.



MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Moudre*, to grind.
Part. act. *Moulant*, grinding.
Part. pass. *Moulu*, ground.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. +
Sing. *Mous*, *mous*, *mout*, I grind, or am grinding.
Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*.

Imperfect.
Sing. *Moulois*, *moulois*, *mouloit*, I did grind, or was grinding.
Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *mouloient*.

Preterite.
Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or did grind.
Plur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*.

Future.
Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall, or will, grind.
Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*.

Conditional present.
Sing. *Moudrois*, *moudrois*, *moudroit*, I should, would, &c. grind.
Plur. *Moudrions*, *moudriez*, *moudroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. +

Sing. *Mous*, *moule*, grind thou.
Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que* Moule, moules, moule, that I may grind.
 Plur. *Moulions, mouliez, moulent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Moulusse, moulusses, moulût,* that I might grind.
 Plur. *Moulussions, moulussiez, moulussënt.*

The compounds of this verb are,

Emoudre, to whet. *Remoudre*, to grind again.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. — I
de penser, v.

will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she does
pour, p.

not fear me. — Why do you not believe me? — They
 (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers. — We
être, v.

would not believe him though he should tell the truth. —
quand, c. vérité, f.

These flowers would grow much better if you watered
fleur, f. arroser, v.

them oftener. — Put out the candle and do not pretend
 to sleep. — Were I in town, I would tell them all that
de en, p.

I know (about it.) — Say nothing to her, believe me.
en, pro. ne rien

— I will tell it to you to-morrow. — I esteem your
estimer, v.

daughter

daughter much, because she told me sincerely that she would do neither. — They who say all they know will readily say what they do not know. — Tell the *volontiers*, adv.

truth with modesty, they who do not love it will always respect and fear it. — If I see your father shall I tell him you are afraid of not succeeding? — Do you think me capable of forgetting my friends so soon? — You always *oublier*, v.

contradict me when I speak. — I hope you will not tell them what happened to me yesterday. — I do not like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body. — Does *parceque*, c.

Mr. R. write to you (now and then) from Paris? — *de tems en tems*, adv.

Do you know his direction? — Would you not write to *adresse*, f.

him if you knew it? — We were writing while *pendant que*, c.

they slept. — The last time they wrote to him they deprived him to send them the invoice of the goods, and *er*, v. *de* *facture*, f.

he has still omitted it in this letter. — What are *encore*, adv.

you doing now? — I am making a cap for your *maintenant*, adv.

sister. — Do not do that, I will do it myself. — I would

do it with all my heart if I could. — Why do not you
de

try that fish? — The first time you (come) to
fois, f. (by the fut.)

see me I will shew you some flowers in my garden

which will surprise you. — These rose-trees grow
surprendre, v. *rosier, m.*

perceptibly. — Though they should deduct ten per cent.
à vue d'œil, adv. *Quand, c.*

they would get still enough. — I never buy
gagner, v. encore, adv. *acheter*

any thing at Mr. P——'s, for he always asks too
chez, p. *car, c.*

much for his goods. — I will undo my gown to-
marchandise, f.

morrow, and do it up again immediately. — The first
sur le champ, adv.

time you mimic any one I will punish you severely.
(by the fut.)

— I would introduce your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew
her. — They were playing while you instructed them.

— You truly join what is useful to what is a-
vraiment, adv.

greeable. — Did not our soldiers join dexterity to va-
adresse, f.

lour. — If you do not take great care of your flow-
prendre, v.

ers the frost will destroy them. — Mr. S. says he will
gêlée, f.

get rid of his horse at the beginning of next month.
commencement, m.

— You

— You would put out the fire if, &c. — Undo that and make it up again before dinner. — Your daughter
avant, p.

joins to the love of study the desire of surpassing her companions. — She reads the History of England every
compagne, f.

day from three o'clock to five. — I will read
heure, f. jusqu'à, p.

your letter as soon as I am dressed. — The in-
(by the fut.) *habillé, p. p.*

habitants of W—— have elected Mr. X. for their re-
re-
presentative in parliament. — I was reading Marmon-
présentant, m.

tel's Tales when you came in. — Mr. R. wrote to
conte, m. entrer, v.

me some time ago, that, when he was in London, the
à

Earl of E—— told him we should soon see a great
Comte, m.

change in the ministry. — He often writes to
changement, m. ministère, m.

me, and always concludes his letters thus, (be so kind
avoir la bonté

as to) send me some news whatever they be. — Put
de

these books in their places again. — I believe he did it
through spite. — Shall I put another trimming to your
par, p. dépit, m. garniture, f.

gown? — I read last year a very good book, but I can-
not remember the author's name. — What grammar

do you read? — Whatever merit a master has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people if he do not
à, p.
 join practice to theory. — I would put all your china
porcelaine, f.
 in that closet if I had the key of it. — You could
cabinet, m.
 not do it in ten days if I did not help you. — We
aider, v.
 would not permit him to go out, though they would. —
de quand, c.
 He promised to pay me the tenth of this month, but he
 has now put me off to the third of December. — He
 submitted to it with the greatest patience. — You promise enough, but you seldom keep your word. —
rarement, adv. tenir, v.
 Mr. D. is a very promising young man. — Will they
 not admit Mr. Z. in their society? — The English
 fleets have performed actions worthy to be transmitted
faire, v.
 to posterity. — Your brother promises me every day to
de
 amend, but, &c. — Were I their master I would
se corriger, v.
 not permit them to go out to-day. — I was writing
de
 to you when your servant brought me your
 letter.

NAITRE,

NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Naitre*, to be born.
 Part. act. *Naissant*, being born, rising.
 Part. pass. *Né*, been born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nait*, I am born.
 Plur. *Naïssons*, *naïsez*, *naïssent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Naïssois*, *naïssois*, *naïssoit*, I was born.
 Plur. *Naïssions*, *naïssiez*, *naïssaient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis*, *naquis*, *naquit*, I was born.
 Plur. *Naquîmes*, *naquîtes*, *naquirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Naitrai*, *naitras*, *naitra*, I shall, or will, be born.
 Plur. *Naitrons*, *naitrez*, *naitront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Naitrois*, *naitrois*, *naitroit*, I should, &c. be born.
 Plur. *Naitrions*, *naitriez*, *naitroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Nais*, *naïse*, be thou born.
 Plur. *Naïssons*, *naïsez*, *naïssent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Naïsse*, *naïsses*, *naïsse*, that I may be born.
 Plur. *Naïssions*, *naïssiez*, *naïssent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Naquissé*, *naquissés*, *naquît*, that I might be born.
 Plur. *Naquissions*, *naquissiez*, *naquissent*.

The compound of this verb is,
Renaitre, to be born again, to revive.

NUIRE,

NUIRE, TO HURT,

is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes in its participle passive *nui*.

*OINDRE*, TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*PAITRE*, TO FEED, TO GRASE,*PAROITRE*, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,

and its compounds,

Comparoitre, to appear, to | *Disparoitre*, to disappear,
make one's evidence, |

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE*.

*PEINDRE*, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,*PLAINdre*, TO PITY,

and *Se plaindre*, to complain,

are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*PLAIRE*, TO PLEASE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.
Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.
Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

Y

INDI-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Plais, plais, plait*, I please.Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois, plaisois, plaisoit*, I did please, or wasPlur. *Plaisions, plaisez, plaisoient*. pleasing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Plus, plus, plut*, I pleased, or did please.Plur. *Plûmes, plûtes, plurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Plairai, plairas, plaira*, I shall, or will, please.Plur. *Plairons, plairez, plairont*.

Conditional present

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient*. please.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaise*, please thou.Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que Plaise, plaisses, plaise*, that I may please.Plur. *Plaisions, plaisez, plaisent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plussé, plusses, plût*, that I might please.Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*.

The compounds of this verb are :

Complaire, to humour. *Déplaire*, to displease.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.Part. pass. *Pris*, taken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend, I take, or am taking.*Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit, I did take, or was ta-*Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient. king.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit, I took, or did take.*Plur. *Primes, prites, prirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra, I shall, or will, take.*Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront.*

Conditional present.

Sing. *Prendrois, prendrois, prendroit, I should, would,*Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendroient. &c. take.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prene, take thou.*Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que prene, prennes, prene, that I may take.*Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prennent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prit, that I might take.*Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

*Apprendre, to learn.**des nouvelles, to hear of.**Comprendre, to apprehend, to understand.**Entreprendre, to undertake.**Méprendre, to mistake, to be deceived.**Reprendre, to take again, to chide, to rebuke.**Surprendre, to surprise.*

PRODUIRE, TO PRODUCE,
REDUIRE, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,
 are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.



RESTREINDRE, TO RESTRAIN,
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.



·*RIRE*, TO LAUGH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Rire*, to laugh.
 Part. act. *Riant*, laughing.
 Part. pass. *Ri*, laughed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Ris*, *ris*, *rit*, I laugh, or am laughing.
 Plur. *Rions*, *riez*, *rient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Riois*, *riois*, *rioit*, I laughed, or was laughing.
 Plur. *Riions*, *riiez*, *rioient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Ris*, *ris*, *rit*, I laughed, or did laugh.
 Plur. *Rimes*, *rîtes*, *rirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Rirai*, *riras*, *rira*, I shall, or will, laugh.
 Plur. *Rirons*, *rirez*, *riront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Rirois*, *rirois*, *riroit*, I should, could, &c. laugh.
 Plur. *Ririons*, *ririez*, *riraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ris*, *rie*, laugh thou.
 Plur. *Rions*, *riez*, *rient*.

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Rie, ries, rie, that I may laugh.
 Plur. *Rions, riez, rient.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Risse, risses, rit,* that I might laugh.
 Plur. *Rissions, rissiez, rissent.*

The compound of this verb is,

Sourire, to smile.

SEDUIRE, TO SEDUCE,

is conjugated as CONDUIRE.



SUFFIRE, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,
 is conjugated like CONFIRE, but its participle passive
 is *suffi*.



SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.
 Part. act. *Suivant*, following.
 Part. pass. *Suivi*, followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Suis, suis, suit,* I follow, or am following.
 Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent.*

Y 3

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivois, suivais, suivait*, I did follow, or was following.
 Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis, suivis, suivit*, I followed, or did follow.
 Plur. *Suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Suivrai, suivras, suivra*, I shall, or will, follow.
 Plur. *Suivrons, suivrez, suivront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Suivrois, suivrais, suivrait*, I should, &c. follow.
 Plur. *Suivriions, suivriez, suivroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Suis, suive*, follow thou.
 Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Suive, suives, suive, that I may follow.
 Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivît*, that I might follow.
 Plur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,
S'ensuivre, to follow from. *Poursuivre*, to pursue.



Se TAIRE, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,
 is conjugated as *PLAIRE*.



TEINDRE, TO DYE,
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

TRA-

TRADUIRE, TO TRANSLATE,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.



TRAIRE, TO MILK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Traire*, to milk.
Part. act. *Trayant*, milking.
Part. pass. *Trait*, milked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Trais*, *trais*, *trait*, I milk, or am milking.
Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *traient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois*, *trayois*, *trayoit*, I did milk, or was
Plur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *trayoient*. milking.

Preterite wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Trairai*, *trairas*, *traira*, I shall, or will, milk.
Plur. *Trairons*, *trairez*, *trairont*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Trairois*, *trairois*, *trairoit*, I should, &c. milk.
Plur. *Trairions*, *trairiez*, *trairoient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais*, *traye*, milk thou.
Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *trayent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
Sing. *Traye*, *trayes*, *traye*, that I may milk.
Plur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *trayent*.

Imperfect is wanting.

The

The compounds of this verb are,

Abstraire, to abstract.

Rentraire, to finedraw.

Distraire, to distract.

Soustraire, to subtract.

Extraire, to extract.



VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vaincre*, to conquer.

Part. act. *Vainquant*, conquering.

Part. pass. *Vaincu*, conquered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vaines*, *vaines*, *vainc*,* I conquer.

Plur. *Vainquons*, *vainquez*, *vainquent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquois*, *vainquois*, *vainquoit*, I did conquer.

Plur. *Vainquions*, *vainquiez*, *vainquoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquis*, *vainquis*, *vainquit*, I conquered.

Plur. *Vainquîmes*, *vainquîtes*, *vainquirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Vaincrai*, *vaincras*, *vaincra*, I shall, or will,

Plur. *Vaincrons*, *vaincrez*, *vaintront*. conquer.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Vaincrois*, *vaincrois*, *vaincroit*, I should, &c.

Plur. *Vaincrions*, *vaincriez*, *vaincroient*. conquer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaines*, *vainque*, conquer thou.

Plur. *Vainquons*, *vainquez*, *vainquent*.

SUB-

* This singular is very little used.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. ^{Que} *Vainque*, ^{que} *vainques*, ^{que} *vainque*, that I may conquer.
 Plur. *Vainquions*, *vainquiez*, *vainquent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquissè*, *vainquisses*, *vainquît*, that I might conquer.
 Plur. *Vainquissions*, *vainquissiez*, *vainquissent*.

The compound of this verb is,
Convaincre, to convince.



VIVRE, TO LIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre*, to live
 Part. act. *Vivant*, living.
 Part. pass. *Vécu*, lived.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vis*, *vis*, *vit*, I live, or was living.
 Plur. *Vivons*, *vivez*, *vivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois*, *vivois*, *vivoit*, I did live, or was living.
 Plur. *Vivions*, *viviez*, *vivoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus*, *vécus*, *vécut*, I lived, or did live.
 Plur. *Vécûmes*, *vécûtes*, *vécurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Vivrai*, *vivras*, *vivra*, I shall, or will, live.
 Plur. *Vivrons*, *vivrez*, *vivront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Vivrois*, *vivrois*, *vivroit*, I should, would, &c.
 Plur. *Vivrions*, *vivriez*, *vivroient*.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *vis, vive, live thou.*
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Vive, vives, vive, that I may live.
 Plur. *Vivions, vivez, vivent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vécusse, vécusses, vécut, that I might live.*
 Plur. *Vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.*

The compounds of this verb are.

Revivre, to revive. Survivre, to outlive.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris on the eighth of February, one thousand seven hundred eighty-one. — The

same men, who seem not to fear death when they

are in good health, often dread it when they are

sick. — What does your sister complain of? — The

swallows generally disappear towards the end of autumn. — You do not seem to pay any attention to

what I say to you. — This man paints very well I assure

sure

sure you. — Why would you hurt him, he never
furer, v.

did you any harm? — I should pity and succour him
faire, v. mal, m.

if it were not his fault. — You shall disappear as
ce, pro.

soon as you have executed my orders. — The last
(by the fut.)

time I saw your sister she appeared to me thoughtful and
penfif, adj.

melancholy. — She is a lady that pleases every body.
mélancholique, adj.

— She appears quite young; how old is she? — Does
she not learn drawing? — I see you do not complain
deffein, m.

of him without a cause. — I really am surpris'd (at it.)
en, pro.

— As surpris'ing as this seems to you, yet it is
cependant, adv.

true. — Does not Mrs. H. appear much concerned at
affligé, p. p. de
her daughter's death? — When you see Mrs. B.
(by the fut.)

I am certain she will please you. — Did you never see
her? — She joins to the qualities of the body those of
the mind. — Take some pears and carry them to your
brother. — Every time I see him I take him for a fo-
é-
reigner. — My sister and I learn French, and under-
tranger, m.

stand very well all that (is said) to us in that language.
on dit

— Though

— Though you should learn all the rules, they would
Quand, c.

not (be sufficient) without practice. — I did not un-
suffire, v.

derstand what you said. — Do not undertake to unde-
de détrom-
ceive her; believe me, you will lose your time. —
per, v.

Though you should undertake to prove the contrary,
de

she would not believe you. — Why did you not take
the same road as we. — He (is not pleased) in his situ-
que se plaire, v.

ation, he sees now all the dangers of it. — When did
you hear of him? — Captain D. told my father that he

had seen him and spoken to him at Madras. — We of-
ten mistake when we judge of others by appear-
se méprendre, v. juger, v.

ances. — Leave me that book a little longer, do not
Laisser, v.

take it again. — That apple-tree produces no fruit. —
pommier, m.

We were reduced to the last extremity when they re-
took our ship. — Go and speak to Mr. R——; but,
sur, p.
above all, do not laugh. — Would you not laugh if you

were in my place? — We laughed much yesterday at
à

the play. — She was an agreeable lady, she was ever
toujours, adv.
smiling

smiling when any body had the honour of speaking to her. — He seduced her by his fine promises. — Whatever he may undertake, he never will succeed, he is too much addicted to the pleasures of this world. —
adonné, p.p.

If we go together to my brother's, will you be a-
chez, p.

ble to follow us? — I will follow you step by step. —
pas à pas, adv.

Why do you follow me as you do? — You may set
comme

out when you please, we will follow you. — Hold your tongue, you do not know what you say. — What books do you translate? — My master says I shall soon translate Marmontel's works. — We should have conquered them if we had fought. — They were quite transported with joy when they heard of the happy news of
de, p.

the peace. — As long as her father and mother
Tant que, adv.

live, they never will consent to her marriage (by the fut.)

with Mr. R. — You will not live long if you drink so much. — She lived about four years after her husband's death. — George III. the eldest son of Frederic,
environ, p. après, p.

ainé, adj.

ric, prince of Wales, was born on the fourth of June,
Galles, f.

1738, and was proclaimed king of Great Britain on the
proclamer, v.

twenty-sixth of October, 1760.—Let a man live in any

country whatever, he is sure to be well respected and
de

treated every where if his behaviour and manners be
mœurs, f. pl.

ruled by the principles of sound policy and the
régler, v. politique, f.

laws of the country he lives in.



OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are only conjugated in the third person singular, are called impersonal verbs; they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns, *il*, or *on*; of this number are :

Il tonne, It thunders.

Il pleut, It rains.

On dit, People say, or it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner : ex.

Il vous convient d'être mo- It becomes you to be mo-
deste, dest.

Il fait beau, froid, &c. It is fine, cold, &c.

Il semble, It seems.

Il s'ensuit que, It follows that.

Il vaut mieux, It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular, have their different tenses, and are conjugated in
the

the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and shew the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Pleuvoir</i> , to rain.
Part. act.	<i>Pleuvant</i> , raining.
Part. pass.	<i>Plu</i> , rained.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present.	<i>Il pleut</i> , it rains, it does rain.
----------	---

Negatively.

Present.	<i>Il ne pleut pas</i> , it does not rain.
----------	--

Interrogatively.

Pleut-il? does it rain?

Ne peut-il pas? does it not rain?

Imperfect.	<i>Il pleuvait</i> , it rained, or it was raining.
------------	--

Preterite.	<i>Il plut</i> , it rained.
------------	-----------------------------

Future.	<i>Il pleuvra</i> , it shall, or will, rain.
---------	--

Cond. pres.	<i>Il pleuvrait</i> , it would, should, &c. rain.
-------------	---

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Qu'il pleuve</i> , that it may rain.
----------	---

Imperfect.	<i>Qu'il plût</i> , that it might rain.
------------	---

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood; the learner may easily find out the rest.

Il arrive, it happens.

Il bruine, it drizzles; from *bruiner*, to drizzle.

<i>Il éclaire,</i>	it lightens ;	from <i>éclairer</i> , to lighten.
<i>Il gèle,</i>	it freezes ;	<i>geler</i> , to freeze.
<i>Il grêle,</i>	it hails ;	<i>grêler</i> , to hail.
<i>Il importe,</i>	{ it matters ; it concerns ;	<i>importer</i> .
<i>Il neige,</i>	it snows ;	<i>néger</i> , to snow.
<i>Il tonne,</i>	it thunders ;	<i>tonner</i> , to thunder.

The verb *AVOIR*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, the adverb of place.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Y avoir, there be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is,* there are,

Negatively.

Present. *Il n'y a pas*, there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

Y a-t-il ? is there ? are there ?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura*, there shall, or will, be.

Cond. presf. *Il y auroit*, there should, would, &c. be,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Qu'il y ait, let there be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a eu, there has, or have, been.

Il y avoit eu, there had been.

II

* *There is*, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit* : ex.

On ne peut pas, or on ne sauroit, *There is no going out to day because of the rain, that is, one cannot, &c.*
sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie,

Il y eut eu, there had been.

Il y aura eu, there shall, or will, have been.

Il y auroit eu, there should, &c. have been.

Qu'il y ait eu, that there may have been.

Qu'il y eût eu, that there might have been.

This verb *ily a*, &c. when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is*, *it was*, &c. When the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que*: ex.

Combien y a-t-il que votre père est arrivé? How long is it since your father arrived?

But in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne*: ex.

Il y a longtemps que je ne vous ai vu, It is a long while since I saw you, or I have not seen you this long time.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood, in this case one of the words *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as its substitutes: ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'étois en France, or *j'étois en France il y a trois mois**, I was in France three months ago.

Il y a quatre ans que mon frère est mort, or *mon frère est mort il y a quatre ans**, My brother has been dead these four years.

Il y a six mois que mon père est malade, My father has been sick these six months.

It also happens that neither the verbs, nor any of the words, *ago*, *these*, &c. are expressed in the sentence: ex.

Z 3

Il

* From these two instances it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number, but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner should, at the same time, observe, that in the above sentences the verb, which in English, is in the preterite indefinite, is rendered in French by the *present* of the indicative, and *when* the preterpluperfect by the *imperfect* of the same mood.

- Il y a à présent neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage, My aunt has now lived nine years in this neighbourhood.
- Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai, My sister had been two years in France when I went there.
- N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demouroit avec nous quand elle mourut ? Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?
- Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici, We have not been above an hour fishing here.
- Il y aura six ans à Noel que votre frère est chez Mr. O—, Your brother will have been at Mr. O—'s, six years at Christmas.
- N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ? Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

N. B. The learner cannot pay too great attention to the construction of the above sentences.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal, when followed by a *substantive*, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things : ex.

- C'est la loi qui l'ordonne, It is the law that prescribes it.
- C'est moi qui l'ai fait, It is I who have done it.
- C'est une chose triste, It is a sad thing.
- C'est une facheuse extrémité, It is a dreadful extremity.
- C'est, or ce sont, eux qui l'ont fait, It is they who have done it.

From these two last instances, it appears, that *it is*, &c. followed by a noun or pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways. But when *it is*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is always put in the singular, though the noun or pronoun be in the plural number : ex.

- Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait ? Is it they who have done it ?

He,

He, she, they, immediately followed by *who; whom,* or *that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or not, but implying people in general, are often made into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive: ex.

<i>C'est être fou que de perdre le tems à ces bagatelles,</i>	He is a fool who loses his time in those trifles.
<i>C'est être heureux que d'être content de son sort,</i>	Such as are satisfied with their lot are happy.

But, if the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used, and the above rule followed for the rest of the sentence: ex.

<i>C'est ne pas connoître la cour que de se fier aux promesses qu'on y fait,</i>	He does not know the court who relies on the promises made there.
<i>C'est ne pas goûter les plaisirs de l'amitié que de n'aimer personne,</i>	Such as love nobody do not enjoy the pleasures of friendship.

This verb, *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object, in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il*: ex.

<i>Il est étonnant que, &c.</i>	It is surprising, &c.
<i>Il est nécessaire, &c.</i>	It is necessary, &c.
<i>Il est dangereux de, &c.</i>	It is dangerous, &c.
<i>Il est extraordinaire, &c.</i>	It is extraordinary, &c.

When the English verb *to be* is used to denote the state of the weather, it must be rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make, or do:

<i>Il fait beau tems,</i>	It is fine weather.
<i>Il fait chaud,</i>	It is hot.
<i>Il ne fait pas chaud,</i>	It is not hot.
<i>Fait-il chaud?</i>	Is it hot?
<i>Ne fait-il pas chaud? &c.</i>	Is it not hot? &c.

See the verb *FAIRE*.

The

The learner must observe that the following verb is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say *je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.
Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Singular.

Present. *Il faut que je fasse*, I must do.
Il faut que tu fasses, thou must do.
Il faut qu'il fasse, he must do.
Il faut qu'elle fasse, she must do.

Plural.

Il faut que nous fassions, we must do.
Il faut que vous fassiez, you must do.
Il faut qu'ils, or elles, fassent, they must do.

Negatively.

Il ne faut pas que je fasse, I must not do.
Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez, you must not do, &c.

Interrogatively.

Faut-il que je fasse? must I do?
Faut-il que vous fassiez? must you do?
Ne faut-il pas que je fasse? must I not do?
Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez? must you not do?

Imperfect. *Il falloit qu'il écrivît*, it was necessary, &c.
for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît*, he was obliged to set out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne*, he must come, he shall be obliged to come.

Cond. pre. *Il faudroit que j'allasse*, I should go, or it would be necessary for me to go.

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille*, that it may be necessary, &c.

Imperfect. *Qu'il fallût*, that it might be necessary, &c.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex. *Il a fallu*, *il avoit fallu*, &c.

This verb, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, or *leur*, according to the number and person: ex.

Il me faut des livres,

I must have books, or I want books.

Il lui faut un chapeau,

He or she must have a hat, or he or she wants a hat, &c.

But if the verb, *to have*, be expressed, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood: ex.

Il faut que j'aie des livres, I must have books, &c.

This method however is not so elegant as the former.

From the above instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future tenses of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive: ex.

Il faut, or il faudra, que je fasse, I must do, I shall be obliged to do, or it will be necessary for me to do.

When *falloir* is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present, of the indicative, the verb following it must be rendered by the imperfect of the subjunctive: ex.

Il falloit, or il fallut, que je parlasse, I was obliged, or it was necessary for me, to speak.

Il faudroit que je vendisse, I should be obliged, or it would be necessary for me, to sell.

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valoir mieux*, to be better, used impersonally, and the adjectives, *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, à propos, &c.* joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun general *on*, which commonly precedes an active verb used impersonally in French, and in English is made by a passive verb: ex.

On m'a permis de chanter, I have been permitted, or allowed, to sing.

On lui a défendu de sortir, He has been forbidden to go out.

In this case, the verb, which in English is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active and translated as if there were, in English,

One has allowed me to sing; *one* has forbidden him to go out: ex.

On n'a pas encore reçu la nouvelle, The news has not been received yet, that is, *one* has not yet received the news.

On rapporte que les Russes ont battu les Turcs, It is reported that the Russians have beaten the Turks.

On le dit, mais on ne le sait pas encore pour sûr, It is said so, but it is not yet known for certain.

On croit que la Suède a déclaré la guerre à la Russie, It is thought Sweden has declared war against Russia.

EXERCISES UPON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Does it rain? — No, sir, it is fine weather. — Is it not very cold? — It is neither cold nor hot. — Was
froid, m. ni, adv. ni, adv.

it

the
ed b
or in

It not you who told me (that) there was a man below
en bas, adv.
 who asked to speak to me? — No, madam, it
demander, v. à
 was not I. — If it did not freeze I would go to see them
voir, v.
 to-day. — Believe me, it is better for you
aujourd'hui, adv. valoir mieux, v. †
 to go there to-morrow, for it will snow soon. — It
demain, adv. car, c. bientôt, adv.
 is a year since I met your brother in Italy. — Where is
 he now? — It is not known, for we have not heard from
 him these two years. — Was there not formerly a
autrefois, adv.
 (coffee-house) at the corner of this street? — I had been
café, m. coin, m. rue, f.
 four years in England when that happened. — I have
arriver, v.
 not seen your sister these four months. — If you go to
 Coxheath to-day you must come back to-mor-
aujourd'hui, adv. revenir, v.
 row. — We had been playing at cards for two hours
 when you came in. — He has been in London these
entrer, v.
 five years, and it is said he there enjoys a considerable
 employment. — My father and mother had not been
 gone

† After the words *better, necessary, needful, expedient, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or imperfect, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

gone out above a quarter of an hour when he arrived.
sortir, v. plus, adv.

— Some people have no pity on their poor (fellow-
gens, pl. de sem-
 creatures.) — More virtue is requisite to support
blable.

good fortune than bad. — They are strangers to the
 charms of society who shun company. — Thomas will
fuir, v.

have been at Mr. H——'s academy two years the tenth
 of next month. — Had not Mr. D. been four years in
 Spain when his sister was married? — Mr. N. had on-
ne
 ly learned French four months when he wrote me a
que

letter in that language. — How long is it since you
Combien, adv.

wrote to your mother? — It¹ is³ but⁴ two⁵ months⁶. —
ne que mois, m.

I would have written to you a month ago if I had
 known your direction. — He is the same man whom
savoir, v. adresse, f.

we saw a quarter of an hour ago. — It is not so cold now
 as it was at the beginning of this month. — It is said

there will not be so much danger in travelling as
tant, adv. à voyager, v. que
 there was before. — You must have been well ac-
acquaintant.

quainted with the places to expose yourself in that
endroit, m. pour, c. de, p.

manner.

manner. — Would it not be better for you to go and speak

to them yourself than to send your servant? —

de envoyer, v. domestique, m. & f.

Shall I be obliged to carry them there? — There

falloir, v. mener, v.

is no going out to-day, it is too warm. — You must

get up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. — Will

se lever, v.

it not be better for you to be there too soon than too

late? — Some people fancy that they can learn a

s'imaginer, v.

language without studying. — Such as are idle, who do not

sans, p.

know the value of time. — Let there be danger or not

I will (go home.) — Do you think (that) it is hot-

s'en retourner, v.

croire, v.

ter in Italy than here? — I shall want (or, I must

en, p. Italie, f.

have) paper, pens, and ink. — If he behaved well,

se comporter, v.

there would not be a man (in the) world that I should

au monde, m.

esteem more. — Much art and nicety are requisite to

pour, p.

please every body. — They obey the commands of God

who love their neighbours and do not reproach them

with their small defects. — I have already told you that

ou

nobody in the world has prepossessed me against you ;

contre, p.

how many times must I repeat it to you? — (How long)
Combien, adv.

is it since your brother went to France? — It
est allé, v.

may be four months. — Have the letters been re-
pouvoir, v.

ceived which were expected yesterday? — It greatly
beaucoup, adv.

concerns children to avoid bad company. — I was in
enfant, m. de éviter, v.

England ten years ago. — Every body agrees there are
 fine women in Great Britain, but there is not so good
 wine as in France. — It may be two years since Mr.

Robert set out for the Indies. — Was it not you who
partir, v.

wrote to Miss A—? — No, it was Miss Rose's
avez écrit, v.

sister. — It does not matter whether it is my servant or
 yours who carries it. — How long is it since you were
porter, v.

in England? — You do not seem to be as lively
paraître, v. enjoué

as you were three years ago. — Must I not shew
montrer, v.

you my work? — If there were any real virtue in the
 world, should we (meet with) so many false friends? —
trouver, v.

No object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of
plaire, v. vue, f.

a man whom you have obliged, nor (is) any music so
 agreeable

agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man who
oreille, f. voix, f.

owns you for his benefactor.
reconnoître, v.



S E C T. V.

OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *participle active*, in French, always ends in *ant*: ex. *parlant*, *punissant*: and, in English, in *ing*: ex. *speaking*, *punishing*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable: ex.

Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous, I see men and women coming to us.

When the participle active is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered, in French, by the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

<i>La grace de Dieu nous empêche de pécher,</i>	The grace of God keeps us from sinning.
<i>Faut-il que je parte sans le voir?</i>	Must I set out without seeing him? &c.

It is sometimes used as a substantive: ex.

<i>La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,</i>	The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.
---	---

N. B. There are some active participles which, by use, have been converted into substantives or adjectives; as, *médisant*, slanderer; *ignorant*, ignorant, &c. which are declinable.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, When it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb, in gender and number : ex.

<i>Mon frère est aimé,</i>	My brother is loved.
<i>Ma sœur est aimée,</i>	My sister is loved.
<i>Mes cousins sont partis,</i>	My cousins are gone.
<i>Mes cousines sont parties,</i>	My cousins are gone.

Secondly, When it is joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, forming the compound tenses of an active or reflected verb, immediately preceded by a pronoun which it governs in the *accusative case*; it must then agree with the gender and number of the substantive to which that pronoun refers : ex.

<i>J'ai parlé à votre frère, et l'ai prié de venir dîner avec moi,</i>	I spoke to your brother, and desired him to come and dine with me.
<i>Connoissez-vous Madame Wrighten? Oui je l'ai vue, et l'ai entendue chan- ter plusieurs fois,</i>	Do you know Mrs. Wrighten? Yes, I saw her, and heard her sing many times.
<i>J'ai lu tous les livres que vous m'avez prêtés.</i>	I have read all the books (which) you lent me.
<i>Avez-vous vu les marchan- dises que j'ai reçues?</i>	Did you see the goods (which) I have received?
<i>Mademoiselle B. a passé deux ou trois jours avec vos sœurs et les a vues pein- dre,</i>	Miss B. spent two or three days with your sisters, and saw them painting.
<i>Vous m'avez souvent prié, or priée, de, &c.</i>	You often desired me to, &c.
<i>Elles se sont repenties de leurs fautes.</i>	They have repented of their faults.

In the above instances the pronouns are governed by the verbs *avoir* or *être* and the participle passive.

Du, pu, and voulu, are excepted as being always in-
declinable.

The

The participle passive is indeclinable in the following cases :

First, When the contrary to the above rule happens, that is, when the pronoun, though preceding the participle passive, is governed by another verb : ex.

Plusieurs personnes se sont présentées à la porte, la sentinelle les a laissés passer. Several persons came to the door, the sentinel let them pass.

C'est une belle chanson, je l'ai entendu chanter deux ou trois fois, It is a fine song, I heard it sung two or three times.

La langue que vous avez commencé d'apprendre est fort utile, The language you began to learn is very useful.

J'y suis allé avec elle, et l'ai vu peindre, I went there with her, and saw her picture drawn.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *passer*, *chanter*, *apprendre*, and *peindre*.

Secondly, When it is immediately followed by a noun (either substantive or adjective) in the accusative case, or by another participle passive, though it should be preceded by a pronoun : ex.

Les Anglois se sont rendu fameux dans cette guerre, The English have made themselves famous (in) this war.

Les Espagnols se sont trouvés obligés de lever le siège, The Spaniards found themselves obliged to raise the siege.

Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras, My sister broke her arm.

And, lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally : ex.

Les pluies qu'il a fait, The rains we have had.

In order to illustrate the application of the above rules in a single example, we must write :

J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au sujet I have received the letters which you wrote to me

are people truly fearing God and loving vir-
gens, m. vraiment, adv. craindre, v.

tue. — Where did you buy these gloves? — I
Où, adv. acheter, v. gant, m.

bought them in France. — She met your father and sis-

ter (as she was) coming here. — His brother, remem-
en ici, adv. se ressou-

bering the injuries he had received, refused to see
venir, v. des refuser, v. devoir, v.

him. — I shall never forget the good actions which
oublier, v.

I have seen you do. — The defending of a bad cause is
 worse than the cause itself. — Your mother, having gi-

ven the necessary orders to my sister, set out for Lon-
partir, v.

don without speaking a word to me. — Miss Farren
sans, p. dire, v. mot, m.

is an excellent actress, I have seen her play several
 times. — Of all the letters which my brother has re-
 ceived (to-day) there is not one (of them) for
aujourd'hui, adv.

me. — I am very sorry (for the) trouble that affair
fâché, adj. de la peine, f.

has given to your aunt. — He was hanged for having
tante, f. pendre, v.

robbed Mr. D. — What books have you lost? — The
voler, v. perdre, v.

fable I gave you to translate is not difficult. — If
à traduire, v.

you can come with me, I will shew you the lady
montrer, v. dame, f. whom

whom I have heard sing. — Your sister has rendered herself celebrated by her wit and beauty. — What

célèbre, adj. esprit, m.

stuff have you chosen! — Have you already read the

éticfe, f. choisir, v. déjà, adv. lire, v.

books I saw you buying? — Not yet; for I have

Pas, adv.

sent them to my sister, who is in the country. —

à

They have found themselves surrounded by the soldiers.

— I should despise a man who is capable of deceiving

mépriser, v. tromper, v.

his friends. — The fine actions your brothers have

ami, m. beau, adj.

done in America deserve great praises. — Their

faire, v. en, p. mériter, v.

general has shewn them all the gratitude he ought.

témoiner, v.

— I have lost the books which you have seen me buy-

ing. — The three country-houses, which your father is

said to have bought, are extremely fine and well situa-

ted. — The history, which I have begun to read, is not

entertaining. — After having (waited for) her (a long

amusant, adj. attendre, v. long

while) she (sent me word) that she was not ready to

tems, adv. envoyer dire, v. prêt, adj. à

go out. — She spends all her time in reading or wri-

sortir, v. passer, v. à

ting. — Did you not see us coming? — The rain

voir, v. pluie, f.

we

we have had this week has prevented me from going
empêcher, v.

into the country. — My sister has bought herself a fine
à acheter, v.

gown. — My mother takes an infinite pleasure in
prendre, v. à

admiring the situation of your house. — The letter you
situation, f.

have written to me in French was tolerably well;
passablement, adv.

I have shewn it to your aunt, who is much pleased
montrer, v. très, adv. content, adj.

(with it.)
en, pro.



SECT. VI.

INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.*

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place, time, quality, quantity, number, order, affirmation, negation, doubt, interrogation, comparison, collection, separation, &c.* But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact: it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

TABLE

TABLE OF ADVERBS.

Abondamment, abundantly, plentifully.

à l'Abandon, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

d'Abord, at first.

Absolument, absolutely.

d' Accord, grant it, done.

Agréablement, pleasantly, comfortably.

Ainsi, (de même) so.

Aisément, easily.

mal Aisément, much ado.

dans un An d'ici, a year hence.

L'Année qui vient, the next year.

Anciennement, } formerly, anciently.
Autrefois

114178/013,

en Ami, friendly.

à l'Amiable, amicably.

en Arrière, } backwards

à reculons, }

Assez, enough.
Assurément, certainly.

Aujourd'hui, to-day:

Time { *d' Aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'night.

to come. } *d'Aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Il y a Aujourd'hui huit jours, this day week,
this day se'night.

Time } *il y a Aujourd'hui quinze jours,* this day fort-
past. } night.

{ il y a Aujourd'hui un an, this day twelve months.

Autant, as much, as many.

d'Autant plus, so much the more.

d'Autant moins, so much the less.

tout Autant,
tout Aussi, } just as, just as much, every whit.

à l'Avenir, for the future, hereafter.

à l'Angloise, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

à l'Italienne, after the Italian, &c.

à la Française, after the French, &c.

à la Turque, after the Turkish, &c.

Bas,

Bas, } below, down.
à or en Bas, }
en Badinant, for fun.
Beaucoup, } much, many, a great deal.
Bien, }
à Beaucoup près, nothing so near.
de Beaucoup, by much.
Bien, well, very.
de Bon cœur, heartily.
de Bon heure, betimes..
de Bonne foi, } sincerely.
sincèrement, }
de Bon jeu, fairly.
de Bon matin, early.
de Bouche, by word of mouth.
à la Bonne heure, in good time, luckily.
à Bon droit, deservedly, justly.
à Bon marché, cheap.
à Bride abbatue, full speed.

Ça et là, to and fro.

à Cause de quoi? on what account?

à Cela près, that excepted.

Cependant, in the meanwhile, nevertheless.

à Cheval, on horseback.

Combien, how much, how many, how,* how long.

Combien y a-t-il que, or

Combien de tems y a-t-il que,

Combien y avoit-il que,

Depuis quand,

Combien de tems,

pendant Combien de tems,

} how long?†

dans

* *How much, how many, how,* are rendered in French by *que*, before an admiration: ex.

Que vous êtes jolie ! How pretty you are !

† We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, or *depuis quand*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased; then the verb, which (in English) is in the preterite indefinite, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood: ex.

Combien

dans. Combien de tems, how long will it be before.

Comme, as, like.

Comme il faut, soundly.

Comment, how.

à Contre cœur, against one's will.

à Contre sens, the contrary way, in a wrong sense.

à Contre tems, unseasonably.

à Corps perdu, hand over head, desperately.

à Côté,

à l'écart,

à part,

à quartier,

} aside.

à Côté l'un de l'autre, a-breast.

de ce Côté-ci, on this side.

de ce Côté-là, on that side.

de Côté et d'autre, up and down, about.

de

Combien y a-t-il que *vous apprenez,*
or depuis quand *apprenez-vous,* le
François ?

How long have you learned French?

Combien y a-t-il que *vous êtes,* or
depuis quand *êtes-vous,* à *Londres ?*

How long have you been in London?

If the verb (in English) be in the preterpluperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect indicative: *ex.*

Combien y avoit-il que *vous appreniez,* or depuis quand *appreniez-vous,* le *François* quand *vous m'écrivîtes ?*

How long had you been learning French when you wrote to me?

Combien y avoit-il que *vous étiez,* or depuis quand *étiez-vous,* à *Paris* quand il mourut ?

How long had you been in Paris when he died?

But if the action have entirely ceased we make use of *pendant combien de tems,* with the following verb in the preterite indefinite: *ex.*

Pendant combien de tems *avez-vous appris* le *François ?*

How long did you learn French?

Pendant combien de tems *avez-vous été* à *Londres ?*

How long were you in London?

N. B. *How long,* in the sense of *for what time,* is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems,* with the verb in the same tense as it is in English: *ex.*

Pendant combien de tems *votre sœur se propose-t-elle de rester en* *Italie ?*

How long does your sister intend to stay in Italy?

de tout Côtés, on all sides, on every side.
Coup sur coup, one after another.

Davantage, more.

Dedans, } within.
en Dedans, } inwardly.

Dehors, } without.
en Dehors, }

Déjà, already.

Demain, to morrow.

le lendemain, the day after.

après Demain, the day after to-morrow.

Dernièrement, lately.

ci Dessus, above.

par Dessus, over and above.

Dessous, } underneath.
au Dessous, }

à Découvert, openly.

à Demi, } half, by halves.
à moitié, }

à Dessein, on purpose, designedly.

à Droite, on the right.

à Double entente, with a double meaning.

Encore, again, yet, as yet.

Enfin, at last.

Ensuite, afterwards, then.

Entièrement, entirely.

Expres, on purpose.

à l'Ecart, out of the way.

à l'Entour, round about.

à l'Envers, the wrong side outwards.

à l'Envi, in emulation.

aux Environs, thereabout.

En nulle manière, in no wise.

En plein jour, }
 or } at noon, at mid-day.

En plein midi, }

En tems et lieu, in a proper time and place.

En tout cas, whatever may happen.

En un clin d'œil, in the twinkling of an eye.
En sursaut, suddenly.

Facilement, easily.

Fidèlement, faithfully.

à la,
 or } *File*, in a file.
de,

à la Fois, together.

combien de Fois? how many times?

une Fois, once.

deux Fois, twice.

tant de Fois, so many times.

Fort, very.

Fort et ferme, stoutly.

à Fond, thoroughly.

de Fond en comble, from top to bottom, to all intents and

de Front, abreast.

purposes.

Galamment, genteelly, gallantly.

Goute à goutte, by drops.

Guères, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

à la Hâte, in haste.

en,
 or } *Haut*, up there, above, up-stairs.
là,

d'Heure, en heure, hourly, every hour.

Hier, yesterday.

Hier au soir, last night.

avant Hier, the day before yesterday.

Ici, here.

Ici autour, hereabouts.

Ici près, hard by.

d'Ici, hence.

d'Ici en quinze jours, within a fortnight.

par Ici, through here, this way.

par Ici, par là, here and there.

à l'Instant, immediately, instantly.

Jamais,

Jamais, ever, never.

à Jamais, for ever.

Justement, justly.

Jusqu'à quand? how long?

Jusqu'ici, hitherto, as far as here.

Jusques là, so far, as far as that.

Jusqu'où? how far?

de Jour, in the day-time.

de Jour à autre, or } from day to day, daily.

de Jour en Jour,

de deux en deux Jours, } every other day.

de deux Jours l'un, or

tous les deux Jours,

dans quinze Jours, in a fortnight.

Là, there, thither.

Là autour, thereabouts.

Là bas, yonder.

de Là, (*en*), thence.

par Là, through there, that way.

Loin, far.

de Loin, afar off, at a distance.

Long tems, a long while.

Lors,

alors, } then.

pour Lors,

dès Lors, from that time.

Mal, ill, wrong.

Maintenant, now.

Médiocrement, indifferently.

Même, even, yet.

de Même, so, in the same manner.

Mieux, better.

de Mieux en Mieux, better and better.

Moins, less.

Moins — Moins, the less — the less.

à Moins, for less, at less.

au Moins,

tout au Moins, } at the least.

en Moins de rien, in a trice.

Naïvement, plainly, ingenuously.

Naturellement, naturally, by nature.

au Naturel, to the life.

Ni — *ni*, neither — nor.

Non pas, or *point*, } no, not.

Non,

de Nuit, by night, in the night-time.

Obligemment, kindly, obligingly.

Où? where?

d'Où? whence?

par Où? through what place? which way? through

Oui, yes.

which?

d'Outre en Outre, through.

Pas à Pas, step by step.

de Part et d'autre, on both sides.

nulle Part, no where.

à Peine, hardly, scarcely.

Pêle-mêle, helter-skelter.

Peut-être, may be, perhaps.

Peu, little.

Peu à Peu, by little and little, by degrees.

à Peu près,

à Peu de chose près, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

dans Peu, in a short time.

depuis Peu, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

à Pied, on foot.

à Pieds nus, bare-feet.

au Pis aller, let the worst come to the worst.

de Pis en Pis, worse and worse.

de Plein gré, with a good will, freely.

de Plein pied, on the same floor.

à Pleines mains, largely.

Plus, more, above.

Plus — *Plus*, the more — the more.

Plus qu'il n'en faut, more than enough.

au Plus, tout *au Plus*, at the most.

de Plus en Plus, more and more.

à Plus forte raison, much more so.

Plutôt,

Plutôt, sooner.

Point du tout, not at all.

à Point nommé, seasonably.

tout à Point, in the nick of time.

à Propos, seasonably.

Pourquoi? or *que ne?* why?

de Près, near, nearly, narrowly.

Premièrement, or } first, in the first place.
en Premier lieu,

dès à Prèsent, from this time.

Presque, almost, hardly.

Presque toujours, most commonly.

de Propos délibéré, on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

Par cas fortuit, by chance, accidentally.

Par derrière, behind.

Par dessus le marché, into the bargain.

Par en bas, downward.

Par en haut, upward.

Par malice, through ill-nature.

Par mégarde, unawares.

Par terre, upon the ground.

Quand? when?

depuis Quand? how long is it since?

Que? why? how?

Quelquefois, some time.

à Quoi bon? to what purpose?

Rarement, seldom.

au or du Reste, as to the rest.

a Rebours, the wrong way.

à la Renverse, } backwards, upon one's back.
à Reculons,

à Rez de chaussée, even with the ground.

Sens devant derrière, preposterously.

Sens dessus dessous, topsy-turvy.

de tous Sens, or } every where.
de tous les Sens,

Séparément, separately.

Seulement, only.†
de Sang froid, in cold blood.
de Suite, together, one after another.
Sur le champ, directly, upon the spot.

Tant, so much, so many.
Tant mieux, so much the better.
Tant pis, so much the worse.
Tantôt, by and by, sometimes.
Tantôt — *Tantôt*, sometimes — sometimes.
Tôt,
bientôt, } soon.
Tôt ou Tard, one time or other.
Tant soit peu, ever so little.
Tard, late.
à Temps, time enough, in proper time.
de long Temps, for a long time, this long while.
de Temps en Temps, or } now and then, from time to
de Temps à autre, } time.
à Tort, wrongfully.
à Tort ou à droit, right or wrong.
à Tort et à travers, at random.
Trop, too much.
Toujours, always, now a-days.
pour Toujours, for ever and ever.
Tous les jours, every day.
Tour à Tour, by turns.
Tout, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely*.
Tout à coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.
Tout bas, softly, with a low voice.
Tout d'un coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.
Tout à fait, quite.
Tout à l'heure, this minute, presently.

Tout

† Only is also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it, when it becomes a conjunction.

* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant : ex.

Ces femmes paroissent tout effrayées These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed.
et toutes consternées.

Tout droit, straight along.
Tout de bon, in good earnest.
Tout du long, all along.
Tout franc, frankly, freely.
Tout haut, aloud.
Tout outre, through and through.
à Tout bout de champ, } at every turn.
à Tous coups,
à Tous égards, in all respects.
de Toutes ses forces, with all his, or her, might.
par Tout, every where.
par Tout où, wherever.

Vite, } quickly.
Vitement, }
Vivement, } to the quick.
au Vif, }
à Vide, empty.
au plus Vite, with all speed.
Voici, here is, behold.
Voilà, there is, behold.
à Vue d'œil, perceptibly.

Là, there, therein, within, thither.



EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING ADVERBS.

Your sister left all her things IN DISORDER. —
laisser, v.

I hope you will not do so. — You did not know me
 AT FIRST. — A YEAR HENCE you will (be able) to
 speak French TOLERABLY WELL. — My father says I
 shall go to* France THE NEXT YEAR. — Your bro-
 ther and mine have settled their affairs AMICABLY. —
régler, v.

She

* See the article indefinite.

She dresses herself QUITE AFTER THE ENGLISH
s'habiller, v.

FASHION, but she lives AFTER THE FRENCH WAY.
vivre, v.

— Your sister has a cap AFTER THE TURKISH
bonnet, m.

FASHION. — If it be fine weather I shall be (back)
de retour

THIS DAY FORTNIGHT. — You may say what
pouvoir, v.

(you please,) but she is NOTHING NEAR so handsome
il vous plaira, v.

as her sister. — We will get up EARLY, and set out
se lever, v.

SOMETIMES. — I wish you A GREAT DEAL of pleasure.

— It (is better) to tell it him BY WORD OF MOUTH
valoir mieux, v.

than to write to him. — I was SO MUCH THE MORE
convinced of what you told me that I dismissed him
renvoyer, v.

THIS DAY MONTH. — THIS DAY WEEK I was
(at your house.) — If you do not do it HEARTILY, I
chez vous

will do it myself. — We said it FOR FUN. — THAT
EXCEPTED, he has bought it VERY CHEAP. — Have
I not won FAIRLY? — You see to HOW MANY
gagner, v.

dangers and HOW MANY reproaches we are liable. —
exposé, p. p.

How dare you run ABOUT whilst your mother
pendant que, c.

(is waiting for) you. — Miss B. is handsome; NEVER-
attendre, v.

THELESS

THELESS I do not love her. — Put that ASIDE. — He arrived VERY UNSEASONABLY. — We went THERE AGAINST OUR WILL. — They drank three bottles of wine ONE AFTER ANOTHER. — Let us walk ON THIS SIDE. — We learn ON EVERY SIDE that peace (will

^{a-}take place) VERY SOON. — Have they not been beaten *voir, v. lieu, m.*

SOUNDLY? — Come TO-MORROW MORNING to see me. — I was LATELY (at your house,) and your brother took all that I said to him IN A WRONG SENSE. — I have heard that your sister will be married IN A SHORT TIME. — She was WITHIN and I was WITHOUT. — We were more than HALF-dead. — Take all these papers and put them OUT OF THE WAY. — You have put on your waistcoat THE WRONG SIDE OUTWARDS. — I was stopped AT NOON. — We will tell him what we think IN A PROPER TIME AND PLACE. — He did it IN THE TWINKLING OF AN EYE. — I have written to your brother TWICE, but he has NOT YET answer-

répon-
ed my letters. — HOW MANY TIMES shall I be o-
dre, v. à

bliged to bid you (to) go THERE? — How¹ trou-
de, dire, v. *de* *imper-*

blesome⁴ you² are³! — My brother knows the French
un, adj.

THOROUGHLY. — HOW LONG have you been in Eng-
land? — HOW LONG did he learn French? — HOW
LONG had you been in Italy when you wrote to me? —
I have told you SO MANY TIMES to write to your mo-
ther

ther that I am QUITE weary of repeating it. —
fatigué, p. p.

Give him BUT LITTLE wine. — Is Mr. D. UP STAIRS?
 Come THIS WAY. — How MANY miles are there from
 HERE to Hampton-Court? — There² must¹ be³ A
il doit, v.

● GREAT DEAL of game HEREABOUTS. — I will call
gibier, m. passer, v.

upon your brother WITHIN A FORTNIGHT. — Come
chez, p. Reve.

back IMMEDIATELY. — How sorry I am for ha-
nir, v. fâché, adj. de

ving displeased you! — I NEVER will see him again. —
 How FAR will you go? — My master comes HERE
 EVERY OTHER DAY. — How LONG have you learn-
 ed mathematics? — How FAR is it HENCE? — I
 shall go to Richmond IN a FORTNIGHT. — How
 LONG do you intend to stay there? — If you go
se proposer, v. rester, v.

THAT WAY you may call at Mr. H—'s. —
pouvoir, v. passer, v. chez, p.

How MUCH I should be obliged to you if you would
 grant me that favour! — FROM THAT TIME I saw
 him NO MORE. — They are NOW in England. — He
 will not do it FOR LESS. — THENCE I went to France,
 and soon after to Italy. — How LONG were you in
après, p.

Germany? — She has written three letters IN A TRICE.
Allemagne, f.

— Virtue is amiable EVEN in an enemy. — You
ilans, p.

work BETTER than your sister. — She reads French
 BETTER

BETTER AND BETTER, but she writes WORSE AND WORSE. — THE LESS you work, THE LESS you will improve. — There are NOW in America 30,000 *faire des progrès*.

men AT THE LEAST. — Did you see Miss Nicole's picture? — It is drawn TO THE LIFE. — I (asked for) *portrait, m.* *fait, p.p.* *démander, v.*

a glass of wine and NOT a glass of water. — How *verre, m.*

LONG have your brothers been at Mr. L—'s academy? — WHERE did you meet them? — Did not they tell you WHENCE they came? — WHICH way are they gone? — The hole, THROUGH WHICH (they made their escape,) was so small that I do not know HOW *s'échapper, v.*

they could get out. — I will follow you STEP BY STEP. — Have you dined? — NOT YET. — AT LAST the rebels retired into the woods with a great loss. — *se retirer, v. dans, p.* *bois, m.* *perte, f.*

The fight was cruel and bloody, and (was kept *combat, m.* *sanglant, adj.* *se mainte-*
up) a LONG TIME with an equal advantage ON BOTH *sir, v.*

SIDES. — If you give me a verb, I will learn it LITTLE BY LITTLE. — She is as tall as you, or THEREABOUTS.

— WHY did you not come SOONER? — How LONG has that gentleman been waiting for me? — I have written three letters, NEITHER MORE NOR LESS. — You are ABOVE twenty years old. — You give me MORE THAN ENOUGH. — You come VERY SEASON-ABLY. — You are HARDLY EVER at home. — How LONG did Mrs. B. wait for me? — They killed him PURPOSELY.

PURPOSELY. — HOW LONG has he been dead? — I met him BY CHANCE. — You study MORE THAN EVER. — He gave me three yards of muslin INTO *mouffeline, f.*

THE BARGAIN. — If I have done that to oblige you, I will MUCH MORE so do it for her. — THE MORE we are above others, THE MORE it be-
au dessus de, p.

come us to be modest and humble. — Virtue reigns so MUCH THE MORE SOVEREIGNLY as it does not reign by force and fear. — We dine MOST COMMONLY be-
en-

tween three or four o'clock. — Our eating room is E-
tre, p.

VEN WITH THE GROUND. — Shall I begin UPWARDS or DOWNWARDS? — Begin UPWARDS. — He has torn my book OUT OF ILL-NATURE. — WHEN *déchirer, v.*

shall I have the pleasure to see you? — HOW LONG had
de
your friend been in his regiment when he died? — How
d.

LONG was he ill? — TO WHAT PURPOSE shall I write to him? — WHY do you walk BACKWARDS? —
marcher, v.

You SELDOM come to see us. — DO DIRECTLY what
en
I bid you. — She has left all my things TOPSY TUR-
dire, v.

VY. — He committed the murder IN COOL BLOOD.
meurtre, v.

— We will dance BY TURNS. — DO you believe it IN
GOOD

GOOD EARNEST. — GO STRAIGHT ALONG. — WHY do not you come to see us NOW AND THEN? — SOME-

TIMES I am at my uncle's in London, and SOME-
chez, p. à, p.

TIMES at my grandfather's in the country. — You arrive TOO LATE. — She speaks AT EVERY TURN without knowing what she says. — Have patience, I
sans, p. savoir, v.

hope you will succeed ONE TIME OR OTHER. — I have (looked for) you EVERY WHERE. — She can find it
chercher, v.

NO WHERE. — He struck me WITH ALL HIS MIGHT.
frapper, v.

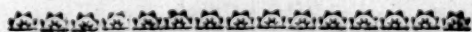
— She is better than her sister IN ALL RESPECTS. — I will follow you WHEREVER you go. — Her
(by the fut.)

misfortunes touch me TO THE QUICK. — My sisters
malheur, m.

were QUITE transported with joy when they heard the
de, p.

happy news of the victory. — Go WITH ALL SPEED to Mrs. Lucas, and tell her to come DIRECTLY. —
chez, p. de

HERE IS my room, and THERE IS yours.



S E C T. VII.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative
C c cases.

cases. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, The following govern the genitive or ablative.

- Autour de*, about, round.
à Cause de, because of.
à Cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c. on your, his, her, our, &c. account.
à Coté de, aside, by.
à Couvert de, free, secure, or screened from.
à Fleur de, close to, even with.
à Force de,* by dint of.
à Moins de, under.
à Raison de, at the rate of.
à l'Abri de, sheltered from.
à l'Egal de, to, in comparifon.
à l'Egard de, with regard, with respect, as to, concerning.
à la Faveur de, by means of.
à l'Insçu de, without the knowledge, unknown to.
à la Manière de,
à la Mode de, } in or after the manner, or fashion.
à l'Opposite de,
 or } over against.
Vis à Vis de,
au Deça de, } on this side.
en Deça de,
au Delà de, on that side, on the other side.
au Debors de, out, without.
au Dessus de, above, over, upon,
au Dessous de, under, below.
au Devant de, before.
aller au Devant de, to go to meet.
au Derrière de, behind, on the back part.
au Dedans de, in, within.
au Lieu de, instead of.
au Milieu de, in the middle of.
au Prix de, in comparifon.
aux Environs de, about, round about.

Ensuite

* This preposition is sometimes englished by *with* : ex.

Il pleure à force de rire, He cries *with* laughing.

Ensuite de, after.

Faute de, for want of.

à la Hauteur de, (sea term,) off.

Hors de, out.

le Long de, along.

Loin de, far from.

Près, or *Proche de*, } near, or nigh, by.

Auprès de,

pour l'Amour de moi, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *de vous*, &c. for my
sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.

tout Auprès de, close, hard by.

Secondly, The following govern the dative.

Conformément, according, pursuant.

Jusqu'à,

or

Jusques à,

} till, until, even to, as far as, to.

Par rapport à, with respect to, on account.

Quant à, as for, as to.

Thirdly, The following require the accusative.

Après, after.

d'Après, after.*

Avant, before.

Avec, with.

à Travers, cross, through.

Chez, in, to, at, amongst.

Chez moi, *chez toi*, *chez lui*, *chez elle*, *chez nous*, &c.
at or to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

Contre, against.

Dans, in, into, within.

Depuis, since, from.

Derrière, behind.

Dès, from,

Devant, before.

de Dessus, from the top.

de Dessous, from under, from beneath.

C c 2

Durant,

* We make use of this preposition in the following sense only :

Il peint d'après un bon maître, He paints after a good master.

Durant, during.
En, in, into, to, like.
Entre, between.
Envers, towards, with regard to.
Environ, about.
Excepté,
Hors, } except, but, save.
Hormis, }
Moyennant, for, provided.
Nouobstant, } notwithstanding, in spite.
Malgré, }
Outre, besides.
Par, by, through.
par Deça, on this side.
par Delà, on that side.
par Derrière, behind.
par Dessus, about, over.
par Dessous, under, below.
Parmi, among.
Pendant, during, for.
Pour, for.
Sans, without.*
Sauf, saving, but with.
Selon,
Suivant, } according to.
Sous, under.
Sur, upon, about.
Touchant, concerning, about.
Vers, towards, to.

OBSER-

* This preposition is sometimes rendered (in English) by the imperfect or preterpluperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the conjunction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

Sans vous, je ne fais ce que je deviendrais,

Sans lui, mon frère auroit été puni,

Sans elle, je serois mort de faim,

If it were not for you, I do not know what would become of me.
Had it not been for him, my brother would have been punished.

But for her I should have been starved.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

ABOVE. This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time* or *number*, so as to be turned by *more than* or *longer than*, is to be made in French by *plus de*: ex.

Le combat dura plus de deux heures, The fight lasted *above* two hours.

AT is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following: ex.

<i>Nous étions à dîner,</i>	We were <i>at</i> dinner.
<i>Vous n'étiez pas au logis,</i>	You were not <i>at</i> home.
or <i>chez vous,</i>	
<i>Je vous payerai à la fin de l'année,</i>	I will pay you <i>at</i> the end of the year
<i>Il est allé à l'église,</i>	He is gone to church.
<i>On dit que vous jouez très bien aux cartes,</i>	It is said you play very well <i>at</i> cards.

After *nouns* or *verbs* denoting *anger*, *derision*, *joy*, *provocation*, *resentment*, *scorn*, *surprise*, or *concern*, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*: ex.

<i>Il se moque de vous,</i>	He laughs <i>at</i> you.
<i>Je me rejouis du bonheur qui vous est arrivé,</i>	I rejoice <i>at</i> the good fortune that has befallen you.
<i>Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,</i>	We are surprised <i>at</i> what you say.

At is made by *chez* when in English it precedes the word *house* either expressed or understood: ex.

<i>J'étois chez votre frère,</i>	I was <i>at</i> your brother's.
<i>Elle est chez sa tante,</i>	She is <i>at</i> her aunt's.

That is, at your brother's house, at her aunt's house.

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to*.

By, when it precedes a verb in the participle active, is rendered by *en*: ex.

Vous parlerez bientôt François en vous appliquant ainsi, You will soon speak French by applying so.

By, after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, and the like, preceding a noun of *weight* or *measure*, is made into French by *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

Nous ne vendons rien à la livre, We sell nothing by the pound.

Vous achetez toujours à l'aune, You always buy by the ell.

The above preposition, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*, *to knock down*, and the like, is made into French by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated: ex.

Il fut blessé d'un coup de flèche. He was wounded by an arrow.

Il fut assommé d'un coup de pierre. He was knocked down by a stone.

Ils furent tués d'un coup de canon, They were killed by a cannon-ball.

If the blows, strokes, thrusts, &c. have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by the preposition *with*: ex.

Ils le tuèrent à coups de flèches, They killed him with arrows,

Il l'assomma à coups de bâton, He knocked him down with a stick.

FOR, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote *thanksgiving*, &c. is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*: ex.

Je me repens de ce que j'ai fait, I repent for what I have done.

Il m'a prié de vous remercier de la part que vous avez prise dans son affaire, He desired me to thank you for the part you took in his affair.

FROM, preceding the name of a *man*, or *woman*, or one of the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, or *interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, *to send*, &c. is generally made in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de sa*, *de notre*, *de votre*, *de leur*, *part* : ex.

De la part de qui venez-vous ? From whom do you come?

Je viens de la part de Mr. D—, I come from Mr. D—.

Allez de ma part chez Madame R—, Go from me to Mrs R—'s.

IN, after words denoting *pain*, *hurting*, or *wounding*, and preceding one of the *possessive* pronouns in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, and the *possessive* pronoun left out : ex.

J'ai mal à la tête, I have a pain in my head.

Il étoit blessé au bras et non à la jambe. He was wounded in his arm and not in his leg.

IN, when placed before the article *the*, preceding a noun denoting a part of time, is not to be expressed at all in French : ex.

Vous le trouverez toujours chez lui le matin, You will always find him at home in the morning.

ON or UPON. This preposition is made by *de*, after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like : ex.

Il vit de pain et d'eau, He lives on bread and water :

and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument : ex.

+ *Vous jouez du violon, de la flûte,* You play *on* the fiddle, *on* the flute.

Before the days of the week, the above preposition must not be expressed: ex.

+ *Venez Vendredi de bonne heure,* Come *on* Friday early.

On, preceding the words *foot, horseback*, meaning the state of walking or riding, is rendered by *à*: ex.

J'étois à pied et elle étoit à cheval, I was *on* foot and she was *on* horseback.

OVER is made by the participle passive of the verbs *finir, passer, achever*, when it denotes an action ended: ex.

Notre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée, Your brother set out as soon as the rain was *over*.

WITH is to be rendered by *dans* when it is used before nouns denoting the *purpose, design, or motive*, in the agent: ex.

Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé, He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

Mon frère est allé chez vous dans le dessein de bien vous gronder, My brother is gone to your house *with* a design of scolding you well.

But it must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to surround, to load, to accuse, to cover, to strike*, and those denoting fullness; likewise after the following adjectives, *amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, enderwed, &c.* ex.

Elle meurt de froid et de faim, She starves *with* cold and hunger.

Ils ne savent que faire de leur argent, They do not know what to do *with* their money.

Je suis content de ce que j'ai, I am pleased *with* what I have.

With

With is rendered by *contre* after words denoting *anger* or *passion*: ex.

Madame votre mère est fâchée contre vous, Your mother is angry *with* you.

With, before nouns denoting the *matter*, *instruments*, *tools*, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, is rendered by one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

Une table à tiroirs, A table *with* drawers.
Bâtir à chaud et à sable, To build *with* lime and sand.

Dessiner au crayon, à la craie, To draw *with* a pencil, *with* chalk.

Se battre à l'épée, au pistolet, To fight *with* swords, *with* pistols.

The above preposition is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with*, *to supply with*, *to reproach with*, &c. ex.

Il a essuyé bien des chagrins, He has met *with* many troubles.

Je lui reprochai son ingratitude, I reproached her *with* her ingratitude.

Nous lui fournirons tout ce dont il aura besoin, We will supply him *with* every thing he wants.

It is likewise to be suppressed when it expresses the *situation*, *position*, &c. of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having*, *holding*, &c. ex.

Il se promène toujours un livre à la main, He always walks *with* a book in his hand;

that is, having or holding a book, &c.

EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

I have sent nothing to your brother BECAUSE OF his idleness, but I forgive him ON YOUR ACCOUNT. — Sit down

down BY that lady's sister. — Though we are
Quoique, c. (in the subj.)

NEAR town, we are not yet SECURE FROM all danger.

— He is become a very good master BY DINT OF study
 and practice. — Cut that forrel EVEN WITH the
ozeille, f.

ground. — He will not sell it UNDER twelve gui-
terre, f. *vouloir, v.*

neas. — As TO what she says, I do not mind it,
se fencier de, v.

but I cannot help being surprised AT her manner
s'empêcher, v.

of answering. — All the prisoners (made their escape)
s'échapper, v.

BY MEANS of the darkness of the night. — Your bro-
obscurité, f.

ther is gone to London WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE
 of your mother. — Now the English ladies (dress them-
s'habiller, v.

selves) AFTER THE French FASHION. — I give you
 all my books EXCEPT the History of France. — Why
 did you not play ON the fiddle ON Friday last? — Do
 not you say that you met my father ON THE OTHER
 SIDE OF the bridge. — We now live ON THIS SIDE OF
 the river; and, if you will come to see me, we will fish
 WITH a net or a line. — Mrs. A. is very proud, she
flet, m. *ligne, f.*

thinks herself ABOVE every body. — I am going to MEET
 my aunt, will you come WITH me? — He took my hat
 INSTEAD of his. — Let us go INTO THE MIDDLE OF
 the meadow. — You always travel by night AT the pe-
 ril of your life. — Do not meddle WITH my affairs,
 meddle

meddle WITH your own. — Your horse (is worth)
valoir, v.

very little IN COMPARISON OF his. — He walks two
or three times a day ROUND the garden WITH a stick
*fois, f. **

in his hand, and only lives ON milk and vegetables. —
legumes, m.

We drank tea, AFTER which we went to the play. —
prendre, v. comédie, f.

I can do nothing FOR WANT OF money. —
pouvoir, v. faire, v.

How do you measure your cambric, BY the ell or BY
batist, f.

the yard? — Do not push me OUT OF the room. —
pousser, v.

We will walk BY the river. — They were OFF the
Cape of Good Hope when they were taken; ABOVE
five hundred men perished in the action. — We are still
FAR from our house. — I met your friend Mr. A. NEAR
the church. — My mother was buried NEAR this mar-
ble pillar. — I do assure you (that) I do it FOR YOUR
SAKE. — ON June the 8th, 1376, died Edward, prince
of Wales, the delight of the nation, IN the 46th year of
his age. The parliament accompanied his corpse TO
Canterbury, where he was interred. — Mrs. Fair
lives in the Strand, OVER AGAINST Catha-
demeurer, v.

rine-street. — My brother bought yesterday twenty
pair of silk stockings AT THE RATE of fourteen shil-
lings and six-pence a pair. — He has been punished
PURSUANT to an act of parliament. — We have ac-
parlement, m.

companied

* See the observations after the article *un, une, a or an.*

compained them AS FAR AS Barnet; there they fought
se battre, v.

WITH swords and pistols: your brother was wounded
IN the arm, and my cousin IN the head. — AS FOR
me, I will not give him a penny. — He arrived here an
hour AFTER you. — Let me drink BEFORE you.
Laïffer, v.

— Did you not see her walk WITH her father? — You
mistake, they were both ON horseback. — Are you not
satisfied WITH the behaviour of your son Thomas? —
content, adj. conduite, f.

He behaved LIKE an honest man IN that affair. — Miss
A. paints AFTER nature. — Did she shew you the pic-
ture she has drawn WITH Indian ink? — No, but she
Chine, f.

shewed me her mother's picture done WITH chalk; I
craye, f.

assure you it is very like. — It was the antient
ressemblant, adj.

Britons who cut a road THROUGH this mountain.
Breton, m. chemin, m.

— Are you going TO Mrs. L—'s? — No, I am going
TO YOUR HOUSE; but, since I have met you, we will
go TO MY HOUSE, where we shall dine. — ACCOR-
DING TO what you tell me and what I have heard, she
has a great deal of wit and merit; and, BUT FOR that
large scar she has IN her forehead, she would be
cicatrice, f.

very handsome. — Do not lean AGAINST that
s'appuyer, v.

wall, it is newly painted WITH oil. — GO INTO my
room;

room ; you will find a letter BEHIND the looking-glass,
miroir, m.

(be so kind as) to bring it to me. — Do not put your-
avoir la bonté de *de*

self BEFORE me, and never speak to any body WITH
 your hat ON your head. — Go FROM me TO Mrs. B's,
 and tell her I shall be glad to see her. — No, stay : tell
 her you come FROM my cousin, who has something to
 shew her. — FROM this moment I believe you, but I
 was very angry WITH her when she told me she
fâché, adj.

would not do it. — Be not surpris'd AT it, she often has
 been accused WITH indifference TOWARDS her best
 friends. — I have read this book FROM the beginning
 TO the end. — We saw the camp FROM THE TOP OF
 the hill. — He always goes out WITHOUT me. — He
 poisoned his brother WITH the hope of inheriting his
hériter, v.

estates. — The army marched three days and three
bien, m.

nights WITHOUT stopping. — At last the king, ha-
Enfin, adv.

ving broken his battle-axe and sword BY the force
bâche d'armes, f.

of his blows, was knocked down WITH a stone and
renversé, p.p.

taken prisoner. — IN what does happiness^s consist^t ?
fait, p.p.

— If you wish to be happy and esteemed IN this world,
 livè LIKE a man of honour and probity. — Thence we
 went TO France and Italy. — It is reported on all sides
 that Paris is to be surrounded WITH walls. — My mas-

ter comes generally IN the morning. — We are BETWEEN fear and hope daily. — Be not unjust TOWARDS your neighbours. — It was ABOUT four o'clock when
prochain, m. Il

we set out. — Take all that you please EXCEPT my sword. — UPON what instrument does your sister play? — She plays very well ON the harpsichord, and she is now learning to play ON the harp. — He will do it FOR two guineas: — I thank you FOR your kindness. — IN France they drink coffee as soon as dinner is OVER. —

on

I walk every day NOTWITHSTANDING the bad weather. — I hope you will succeed IN your undertaking IN spite OF Mrs. Slander. — BESIDES his own money he spends all his sister's. — It is said (that) Gibraltar is blocked up BY land and BY sea. — I have passed
bloquer, v.

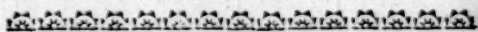
THROUGH France and Italy. — Let us see whether you
f, c.

can jump OVER the table. — You may go and walk
sauter, v.

when the rain is OVER. — William the Second was killed BY an arrow IN the New Forest. — We have passed THROUGH Germany. — Look UNDER the door
Allemagne, f.

and you will see it. — Envy, jealousy, and slander,
médifance, f.
always reign AMONG authors. — What have you done DURING my absence? — Your aunt has sent me some books FOR you. — WITHOUT him what could I have done? — He was so mortified AT the disobedience of his sons, that, THROUGH grief, he became ill, and died.
tomber, v.

— IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR me he would not have paid you. — Do I not live* ACCORDING TO the rules
vivre, v. *règle, f.*
 you have prescribed? — I found your buckle UNDER
prescrire, v. *boucle, f.*
 the chair. — You said you had left it UPON the ta-
laisser, v.
 ble. — I have no money ABOUT me. — Did he not write to you CONCERNING that affair? — It was TO-
 WARDS the evening when we arrived.



S E C T. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continuative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand that different conjunctions require different states of the verbs. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

Afin de, in order to.

<i>à Moins de</i> ,	}	unless.
or		
<i>à Moins que de</i> ,	}	before.
<i>Avant de</i> ,		
better		
<i>Avant que de</i> ,		

D d 2

Au

* See the *N. B.* before the exercises upon the first conjugation.

Au lieu de, instead.

De crainte de,
or } for fear of.

De peur de,

Excepté de, except to.

Faute de, for want of.

Jusqu'à, to that degree that, till.

Loin de, far from.

Plutôt que de, rather than.

The following require the verb in the *indicative*.

Ainsi que,* as.

tout Ainsi que,* just as.

Après que,* after that, after.

à Cause que,
or } because.

parceque,

à Ce que, according as, or to.

à Condition que,* on or upon the condition that.

à Mesure que,* in proportion as, as.

Au lieu que, whereas.

Aussi tôt que,
D'abord que,
Dès que,
Sitôt que, } * as soon as.

Dès le moment que,* the moment that.

Aussi long tems que,* as long as.

Aussi loin que,* as far as.

Attendu que, considering that, seeing that.

Comme,
or } * as.

Entant que,

De façon que,

De manière que,

De sorte que,

Si bien que,

Tellement que,

Depuis que, ever since, since.

Puisque, since.

De même que, even as.

D'où vient que, how comes it to pass that, why.

Lorsque,
or } *when.

Quand,

Mais, but.†

Outre que, besides that.

à Peine — que, hardly, scarcely, — but, than, or when.

Pendant que,
Tandis que, } * whilst, while.

Peut être que, perhaps.

Quand,

Quand même, } though.

Que — ne, than,† only.

Selon que,
Suivant que, } * according as.

Tant que,* as long as.

Autant que,* as much as.

d'Autant que, whereas, for so much as, since.

d'Autant plus — que, so much more, the more — as.

Toutes les fois que, every time, as often as, whenever.

Sinon que, except that.

Si, if, in case, whether.

This last conjunction, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

Si vous venez chez moi, et si vous ne me trouvez pas, If you call upon me, and do not find me at home,

it is more elegant to say,

Si vous venez chez moi, et que vous ne me trouviez pas, &c.

Que must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction

D d 3

in

† This conjunction, when it begins a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it.

‡ *Que* before the noun and pronoun, and *ne* before the verb.

in the first part of it ; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding : ex.

Des que je l'aurai vu et	As soon as I have seen him
que je lui aurai parlé,	and spoken to him, I
je vous le ferai savoir,	will let you know it.
Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que	Though he be richer than
vous et qu'il ait de meilleurs amis,	you and have better friends.

(*) The conjunctions, that have this mark affixed, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present tense of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered, in French, by the future.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

Afin que, } that, in order that, to the end that.

Pour que, }

Avant que, before that.

Au or en cas que, in case that, if, suppose that.

à Moins que,† }

Excepté que,

Si ce n'est que,

Que — ne,

Bien que,

Encore que,

Quoique,

Bien entendu que, with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

De crainte que,† } lest, for fear.

De peur que,

Dieu veuille que, God grant.

Puisse or plut à Dieu que, please God, or would to God.

à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.

Hormis

† These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the following verb: ex.

De crainte, or de peur, qu'ils ne viennent. For fear they come.

A moins qu'il ne le fasse, Unless he do it.

Hormis que, } save that.
Hors que, }
Jusqu'à ce que, till, until.
Loin que, far from.
Moyennant que, } save that.
Pourvu que, }
Nonobstant que, notwithstanding that:
Pour peu que, how little soever.
Sans que, without that.
Soit que, whether — or.
Supposons que, let us suppose that.
Tant s'en faut que, it is so far from.

EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

IN ORDER TO learn well one must study with a
devoir, v.
 great deal of attention. — It will be impossible for you
 to learn French UNLESS you be diligent. — Let us
de
 breakfast BEFORE we begin (any thing.) — He is gone
rien.
 to church INSTEAD OF coming with us. — I would
 not do it FOR FEAR OF displeasing you. — FAR FROM
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could to
à se battre, v. *pour, p.*
 prevent them. — She would do (any thing) (in the) world
tout au
 RATHER THAN speak to him. — I love you BECAUSE
 you behave better THAN your brother does. — He
se comporter, v.
 will write to you ON CONDITION THAT he shall speedi-
prompte-
 ly

ly — receive your answer. — My mother will come
ment,adv.

to see you PROVIDED you promise me to go to the play
o

with her. — We were HARDLY arrived WHEN it began
to rain. — I called at your sister's AS you (had) desired
a passer,v.

me. — So THAT you saw her and spoke to her. — She
said nothing to me, EXCEPT THAT it was impossible
for her to do what you required of her. — I will explain
o

these rules to you AS we read them. — WHEN she had
done speaking she (fell asleep.) — AS SOON AS
fini,p.p. de s'endormir,v.

they had taken the general, all the army surrendered. —
We will set out AS SOON AS we have dined. — As
LONG AS you (keep company with) those people never
fréquenter,v.

come to my house. — HOW COMES IT TO PASS THAT
I have not seen you till now? — You (look at) me AS
regarder,v.

IF I had taken your book. — You are quite altered
changé,p.p.

SINCE I saw you last. — You must stay at
dernièrement,adv.

home SINCE you are* not well. — Did you not see Mr.
Brown this morning? — Yes, BUT I could not speak
to him. — If you could give me BUT the half of the
money you owe me I should be very much obliged to
you. — HOW COMES IT THAT your sister has not yet
sent me the books I lent her a fortnight ago?† — As

SOON

* See the exercises on the reflected verb.

† See the verb *y avoir* conjugated impersonally.

SOON AS I have dressed myself and breakfasted I will go to see him. — Your brother was* BUT twenty years old WHEN he was made a captain. — He had more experience THAN you have. — Send Miss White to me WHEN she has done writing. — WHILST you play
fini, p. p. de

and lose your money your sister is learning her lesson. — We must pity him who has no talent, and ONLY despise him who has no virtue. — Play on the harpsichord WHILE I write my letters. — If you would love to
fin, m. *a*

study AS MUCH AS you love to play I should have (no occasion) to complain. — I punish you AS you deserve. — I punish you AS you deserve
aucun sujet, m.

serve. — AS LONG AS you behave well you will
se comporter, v.

be dear to me. — That would give me more pleasure THAN you imagine. — I have been at the play
s'imaginer, v. *comédie, f.*

BUT twice this year. — I see the king and queen EVERY TIME I go to Windsor. — IF your father do not arrive to-day, and, IF you want money, I will lend
avoir besoin

you some. — He interrupts me AS OFTEN AS I speak. — BESIDES THAT he never studies, and is always in the country, he has not so much wit as his sister. — IF you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c. — I will explain to you every difficulty, (IN ORDER) THAT you may take courage and learn well. — IF you study and take pains, I assure you that you will

* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be.

will learn the French language in a very short time. — Carry that money to Mrs. N. IN ORDER THAT she may pay the writing-master WHEN he comes. — Did you not receive your goods BEFORE war was declared? — In case Mr. — calls here, tell him I am not at
passer, v.

home. — You cannot finish (to-night) UNLESS I help
ce soir *aider, v.*
you. — If you love me, and are willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her. — She shall not go into
à

the country UNLESS I go with her. — I shall not set out TILL I have dined. — I will not lend it to you UNLESS you promise me to return it to her soon. — They are
de rendre, v.

not happy THOUGH they be rich. — THOUGH you should have the best master in England, and learn all the rules of the grammar, IF you do not put them in practice you will never speak good French. — We avoided an engagement FOR FEAR, or LEST, we should
éviter, v.

be taken, their force being superior to ours — This proceeding was THE MORE extraordinary AS it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. — WOULD TO GOD I had been there, I would have conquered or perished. — GOD FORBID I should blame your conduct. — GOD GRANT you may succeed in all your undertakings and be not disappointed in your hopes. — Why did you tell me my father was arrived, NOTWITHSTANDING you knew the contrary. — I am going to write TILL we go out. — HOWEVER LITTLE you
give

give her she is always pleased. — I will give you leave to dance PROVIDED you promise me not to overheat *de* *des' échauffer, v.* yourself. — Can you touch it WITHOUT my brother's perceiving it? — SUPPOSE we dine here to-day, and to-morrow at our house. — He² IS SO FAR¹ FROM despising⁴ her³.

N. B. It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting *wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, intreaty, persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c.* always require the conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*. In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the *will* is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb, which in English is put in the infinitive mood, the participle active, or the future tense, must, in French, be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	I will have* him <i>do</i> that.
<i>Je doute que vous le fassiez,</i>	I doubt of your <i>doing</i> it.
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,</i>	I do not believe she <i>will</i> come.

See *FALLOIR*, and the rules after it.

Qui,

* It may be seen, by this instance, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose, &c.* must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: ex.

<i>Je veux que vous me montriez cette lettre,</i>	You <i>shall</i> shew me that letter, that is to say, I <i>choose</i> you should shew me that letter.
<i>Je ne veux pas que votre frère sorte aujourd'hui,</i>	Your brother <i>shall</i> not go out to-day.
<i>Voulez-vous que je danse ?</i>	<i>Shall</i> I dance ? that is to say, do you <i>choose</i> I should dance ? &c.

Qui, que, or dont, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood: ex.

C'est la plus belle femme She is the handsomest woman
qui puisse se voir, or que man that can be seen,
je connoisse, or that I know.

When *qui* stands as nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Je veux une femme qui soit I will have a wife that is
belle, handsome;
 that is, *on condition, provided,* she be handsome.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day.

— She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings. — You would have her return to-morrow,

pouvoir, v. revenir, v.

but that is impossible. — I fear she (will go away)
craindre, v. s'en aller, v.

without speaking to me. — I will have your father know what you have done, you must stay here till he comes.
rester, v.

— I much fear he will come sooner than you expect
attendre, v.

him. — Do not you say you are surprised that he has not written to you? for my part I do not wonder at it, for
quant à moi

he is the most negligent man I know. — Do you think he will succeed and obtain the place he aims at? —
aspirer, v.

Your mother would have you come directly, why
vouloir, v.

do not you come then? — You wish him to pay you;
 he

he has no money; I am obliged to lend him some every

day. — If you believe him to be your friend, why then
do not you follow his advice? — It is necessary for

you to go there and assure him that he has done nothing
that ought (to make me angry.) — I wonder that Mr.
devoir, v. *fâcher, v.*

R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. — He is
the most charitable man we have in this neighbour-
hood, his purse is always open to any one who is poor
and industrious. — Did you not tell me you (sought for)

a master who had a good pronounciation and a great deal
of patience? — I know nobody that improves

more than Miss K——; and, when she was learning
French, had she learned it by rule, she would speak,
write, and translate, now much better than Miss S—,
though she was two years in France. — If you meet
her, and* she speak to you, do not answer her. — Or-
der her to do it. — I absolutely intend that she shall
faire des progrès
vouloir, v.

go there directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill
or well, I will have him set out as soon as he has recei-
ved my letter. — Do you imagine we are sure they

will come to-night? — Has not your brother some friends
to whom he can trust? — Do you think it is possible
s'imaginer, v. *se fier, v.* *croire, v.*

for you (to bring it about?) — Your father has bought
de en venir à bout, v.

E e

the

* See the remark on the conjunction *si*, if.

the finest horse that I have ever seen. — It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. — I do not say I
souffrir, v. mériter, v.

have seen it. — He (was afraid) lest you should come
craindre, v. que ne

whilst he was (gone out.) — You did not think that she
sortir, v.

wanted to deceive you when she told you that? — I
vouloir, v.

wonder you should doubt that it is your daughter
être surpris, v.

who, &c. — Is there any lady of five-and-twenty years that appears more reasonable than she does? — My fa-

ther would have me walk all the way. — Our master has ordered that we should get up to-morrow morning early. — Do you think my mother will let us go to the ball next week? — Your sister shall go with me to Croydon and not you. — If ever you choose a friend, I wish you may choose one whom you esteem and who may be an honest man. — Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair I would communicate it to him immediately. — It will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself whilst he is in town; I do not doubt of his undertaking it, he is the most diligent and the most careful man we have in this country. — However, I would not have you do things too precipitately, consult somebody who is your friend and on whom you can rely. — Were I certain that you would speak to him about it, I would desire him to come and dine with us to-morrow, for I am to see him to-night

at

at his brother's. — Shall my brother shew you his translation? — Do you know any body who is going to France? I have something to send to my sister. —

à

Yes, I know a gentleman who is going to Paris, shall I tell him to (call upon) you? — Your uncle is very
de passer chez

glad you have written to your father. — I will give you no rest unless you be reconciled with your mother. —
que ne

I do not believe it is she who has done it. — Do you believe it? — Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. — The best reason I can give you is, that I
pouvoir, v.

was not well. — If you lend me a horse, lend
se porter, v.

me one that goes well.



SECT. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

Allons; gai, come, be chearful.

ça courage! come, come on!

Bon! good!

Ah, mon Dieu! oh, my God!

Ah, ouida ! ay marry !
Ha, quelle joie ! oh, joy !
ô ciel ! oh heaven !
Fi, fie ! fy upon !
Hola, ho ! ho there !
Malheur à ! woe to !
Miséricorde ! bleſs me !
Prenez garde, gârre ! have a care !
Paix, chut, ſt ſt ! hiſt, huſh !
Silence ! ſilence !

EXERCISES UPON THE INTERJECTIONS.

COME, friends, let us rejoice ! — GOOD ! here are
ſe réjouir, v.
 news for you, brother. — FY, FY ! Robert, you do
 not think of what you ſay. — OH ! that modeſty is
penſer, v. à *que*
 a lovely virtue ! — Why do not you endeavour to ac-
s'efforcer, v. de ac-
 quire it ? — ALAS ! who could expreſs the torments
quérir, v.
 I ſuffer here ! — WOE TO you ! uſurers, miſers, un-
uſurier, m. avare, m.
 juſt poſſeſſors of (other people's) goods, hearken to theſe
autrui, pro. bien, m. écouter, v. &
 words, The treaſures of iniquity (will be of no ſervice)
parole, f. ne ſervir de rien
 to you. — OH ! (lazy people,) go to the ant, con-
pareſſeux, adj. fourmi, f.
 ſider what ſhe does, and learn from her wiſdom and in-
 duſtry. — BLESS ME ! I am undone ! — HUSH there !
perdu, p. p.
 SILENCE ! — OH ! the diſmal effects which lazineſs
funefte, adj.
 produces !

produces ! — How¹ tremendous³ an² office³ is⁷ that of⁴
terrible, adj. le

a⁵ judge⁶ ! What wisdom, what integrity, what know-
 ledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience, (are re-
ence, f. ne faut-il
 quired !)
pas avoir, v.



REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de*, *à*, AND *pour*.

Having, in this manner, gone through the respec-
 tive parts of speech, there will be no necessity for a syn-
 tax. It will however be necessary to give some rules
 for ascertaining the proper usage of the particles *de* or *à*,
 and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive
 mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some
 idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the
 French tongue.*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the
 latter, having no subject expressed or understood, must
 be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign
to be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must ne-
 ver be preceded by a particle.

First, when the verb in the infinitive stands nomina-
 tive to another verb : ex.

Aimer est un verbe, To love is a verb.

Secondly, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pou- voir, oser, vouloir, and penser*, when rendered by *to be like or near*.

E c 3

EXER-

* The great number of idiomatical expressions, in the French language, has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement ; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing ; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

EXERCISES UPON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every
 body has not. — (To be able) to live with one's self
 and to know how to live with others are the two great
 sciences of life. — I had rather do it now than later.
aimer mieux, v.

— Why dare you not undertake it? I think you may
pouvoir, v.
 succeed. — He says he will lend you his gun with all
réussir, v. *fusil, m.*
 his heart, because you know how (to make use) of it,
se servir, v.

— Aristotle, though so great a philosopher, was never
 able to penetrate the cause of that prodigy. — Tell him
 that he may set out when (he pleases.) — You never
il lui plaira, v.

could come more seasonably. — We are to go to
pouvoir, v.

Vauxhall to-morrow. — I am going to see your brother.
 — (Is it not better) to set out now than to wait
valoir mieux, v. *de attendre, v.*

any longer? — If you think to oblige her you mistake. —
plus *se tromper, v.*

We were to have had a ball yesterday, but my sister
 was not well. — You did very right, for you ought
bien, adj. car, c. *devoir, v.*
 not to speak to him. — I had like to have fallen
penfer, v.

twenty times coming here. — To instruct, to please,
 and move the passions, are the three principal quali-
 fications

ations requisite in an orator. — If you would read
vouloir, v.
 this book, I could lend it to you for four or five
pouvoir, v.
 days.



The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood: first, when any of the following words, *of*, *from*, or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the *N. B.* upon the participle active.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly, after these and the like adjectives *decent*, *glad*, *impossible*, *necessary*, *sorry*, *worthy*, *vexed*, &c.

Fourthly, after the following verbs; *to advise*, *to apprehend*, *to bid*, *to cease*, *to command*, *to conjure*, *to counsel*, *to defend*, *to defer*, *to deserve*, *to desire*, *to endeavour*, *to fear*, *to hasten*, *to intreat*, *to long*, *to order*, *to permit*, *to persuade*, *to pray*, *to pretend*, *to promise*, *to propose*, *to refuse*, *to remember*, *to threaten*, *to tell*, *to warn*, *to undertake*, &c. and the greatest part of the reflected verbs.

And, lastly, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother to lend me some money.
prier, v.

— My mother ordered me to tell you to go and speak
ordonner, v.

to her directly. — Did you not permit him to go out
sortir, v.

this morning? — I am surpris'd to find you so ill. — I
 have not desired you to play. — Bid your sister to
Dire, v. à

send

send me my book. — We were afraid of displeasing you. — What do you advise me to do in such a case?
conseiller, v.

— My sister and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next. — I am very glad to hear you are better.
passer, v. chez, p.
apprendre, v.

— She does not pretend to speak French as well as you. — We are tired of repeating to you the same things so often. — If you finish your exercise soon you will have the pleasure of walking whilst the others will have the trouble of working. — It is necessary to tell her not to go there (any more,) for she would be in
ne plus, adv.

danger of losing her life. — Endeavour to please your masters by your application to study. — Do not you remember having said you would carry me to the
de mener, v.

camp? — Do not they deserve to be encouraged who undertake to serve the public? — We are all glad to hear you have overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry to have heard the contrary. — What a fool
meriter, v.

you are to grieve so when you have so much reason to rejoice. — When do you purpose to set out for the country? — Never expect to speak French well unless you practise very much. — I shall never refuse to do
s'affliger, v.
rendre, v.

you service as long as it is in my power. — Have you

a mind to do what you have promised me? — I cannot
envie, f.

not give you [the book you asked me for, my brother
 has not (thought fit) to send it to me back again. —
juger à propos, v.

I desired you to bring your sister with you; why did
 you not? — I forbid you to speak or write to him
défendre, v.

(any more.) — Would you not be very glad to read
d'avantage, adv.

and speak Italian? — Condemn the opinion of no one
 hastily, but endeavour to regulate your own by the
s'efforcer, v.

line of truth. — Who can hinder me from speaking
vérité, f. empêcher, v.

or writing to her? — (Give me leave) to tell you that
Permettre, v.

you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. — He
mal, adv.

(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull
se contenter, v. ab.

down the statues, but, &c. — Is there any thing
battre, v.

more glorious than to change anger into friendship? —

(I long) to see your mother and tell her all that I
Il me tarde, v.

think (about it.)
en, pro.



The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the
 infinitive mood: first, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*,
 to

* *Do it is understood, and must be expressed, in French.*

to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action: ex.

J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.*

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

And, lastly, after the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure, a delight, in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

Come here, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. — We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run. — I cannot go to the play to-night, for I have five or six visits to pay. — Is there any thing pleasanter to see than the *rendre, v.*

flux and reflux of the sea? — She is always the first to (find fault) with what I do. — Do not gather that *trouver à redire à*

apple, it is not yet good to eat. — Mr. N. told me you had a country house to let. — Mr. F. — is a very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming. — Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in

learning

learning your lesson. — The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. — What you say of her is very hard to be believed. — Tell him I have no com-
difficile, adj.

plaints to make about his conduct. — Why do you ob-
de

lige her to ask my pardon, since she is not inclined to do it herself? — I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. — Life is so short that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. — There is no more danger to fear. — Use yourself, said a father
s'accoutumer, v.

to his son, to practise virtue; that alone will help you to bear with patience the vicissitudes of fortune. —
supporter, v.

Endeavour to please your masters. — Never amuse yourself in reading bad books. — You can never spend
passer, v.

your time better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. — Learn to speak well, but above all to speak truth. — That science, which teaches
dire, v.

us to see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation. — An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. — Does your master teach you to translate English into French? — Do ye begin to translate French well? — Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you? — Why do ye not (get
s'ap-
ready) to set out with us? — I love to discourse with
préter, v. *s'entretenir*, v.

polite and sensible people.

N. B.

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel or force, to endeavour, to oblige,* may be succeeded by *de* or *à*, as most convenient.



The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to, to the end, or for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less*; and before an infinitive, in the beginning of a period.

EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I will do every thing in my power to please him. —
Mrs. B— has too much pride to confess she (is in the *avoir*

wrong.) — To know geography well, one must, &c.
tort

— I assure you, that I came on purpose to see you. —
She will do all that is in her power to oblige you, and
to prove to you that she is truly your friend. — The
wicked live to die, but the righteous die to live. — She
has vanity enough to believe all that you tell her. — I
wrote to you sometime ago to let you know that your
faire, v.

brothers were arrived — He promised me that he would
do every thing to deserve the honour of your protection.

— I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's, to desire
her to send me back again the book I lent her a month
ago, but she was not at home. — We did all that
faire, v.

we could to pass the river, but we could not (bring it
venir à

about.) — To convince you that I am ready to do you
bout de, v.

any service, (be so kind as) to command me. — Why
avoir la bonté de

did you not punish her for having done what you forbid
her to do? — A man should live a century, at least,
vivre, v. siècle, m.

to know the world, and many centuries to know how
to make a proper use of that knowledge.



IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS ON THE VERB AVOIR, TO HAVE.

Avoir mal à la tête, to have the head ache, or a pain in
one's head.

Avoir mal aux oreilles, to have sore ears, or a pain in
one's ears.

Avoir mal aux yeux, to have sore eyes, or a pain in
one's eyes.

Avoir mal au nez, to have a sore nose, or a pain in one's
nose.

Avoir mal à la bouche, to have a sore mouth, or a pain
in one's mouth.

Avoir mal aux dents, &c. to have the tooth-ache, &c.

We say, after the same manner,

Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c. ex.

J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds. My head, my hands, and
my feet, are cold.

Avoir beau, to be in vain: ex.

Vous avez beau parler, It is in vain for you to talk.

Avoir beaucoup de peine, to have much ado.

Avoir de la peine à : ex.

J'ai de la peine à vous croire, *I can hardly believe you.*

Avoir besoin de, to want, to have occasion for.

Avoir la bonté de, (*daigner*,) to be so kind as.

Avoir connoissance, avis de, to have notice of.

Avoir cours, to take, to be in vogue.

Avoir la mine de, to be like, to look like : ex.

Vous avez la mine d'être *You look like* a man of understanding.

Avoir bonne mine, to look well : ex.

Vous avez très bonne mine *You look very well* to-day.
mine aujourd'hui,

Avoir plus de peur que de mal, to be more afraid than hurt.

Avoir raison, to be in the right.

Avoir tort, to be in the wrong.

Avoir soin, to take care.

N'avoir que faire de, to have no occasion or business of
or for.

<i>N'avoir garde de,</i>	} are	{ to be sure not,
or		
<i>Se garder bien de,</i>	} expressed	{ or

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had A PAIN IN MY head. — My brother would have come with me, but he has A SORE leg, and is obliged to keep his bed. — I heard your mother had THE TOOTH-ACHE; is it true? — No, madam, but she has A PAIN IN HER side, which prevents her from going out. — I have not yet finished my exercise; for, MY HANDS WERE SO COLD, that I could not write
another

another word, besides that, I HAD MUCH ADO to find my books, I did not know where to look for them. — IT WILL BE IN VAIN FOR YOU to write to me, I never will answer you. — I CAN HARDLY believe what you tell me. — It IS IN VAIN FOR me to speak to her, she still goes her own way. — Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she WAS MORE AFRAID THAN HURT. — It HAS BEEN IN VAIN FOR him to torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P—'s. — IN VAIN I give myself trouble; I am not the richer for it. — Your sister does not LOOK SO WELL to-day as she did yesterday. — AM I NOT IN THE RIGHT to go there no more? — I WILL TAKE CARE to prevent them from coming here. — YOU ARE IN THE WRONG not to ask for his horse, he would lend it to you. — Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one of my own? — I HAVE NO OCCASION FOR his. — BE SO KIND as to carry that letter to Mr. H——'s, but BE SURE NOT to tell him who sent you. — I hope you will by NO MEANS go there again, after what has happened to you. — He was so altered, that she HAD MUCH ADO to recollect him, but he now begins TO LOOK VERY WELL.



ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

Etre { *à son aise*
en bonne posse,
bien dans ses affaires, } to be in good circum-
stances.

Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un, to be in great favour with one.

Etre mal avec quelqu'un, to be out with one.

Etre à charge à quelqu'un, to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden to one.

Etre but à but, to be equal.

Etre de moitié, to go halves.

Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon, to be within gun-shot.

Etre à la portée de la voix, to be within call.

Etre { *à la veille de,* } to be upon the brink,
 { *sur le point de,* } or very near to.

Etre en état de, } to afford.
Avoir le moyen, }

EXERCISES UPON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother is in good circumstances now.—
 Somebody told me he was in great favour with the king. — Yes, it is true, but he is out with my father, because he is troublesome to the family. — Well, Mr. R. and he are equals. — I thought Mr. A. and Mrs. D. went halves in that affair, but I heard the contrary. — Suffer me to tell you you do very wrong to treat her as you do, you undoubtedly must have forgotten she is in the queen's favour. — Well, if she be in the queen's favour, do you imagine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct? — The two fleets were within gun-shot, and very near beginning the engagement, when we left them. — I will be within call. — Why do you not take a coach now and then? said she to me. — I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I cannot afford it.

ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

Faire cas de, to value, to esteem.

Faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.

Faire le malade, to sham sickness.

Faire l'école buissonnière, to play truant.

Faire beaucoup de chemin, to go a great way.

Faire le bel esprit, to set up for a wit.

Faire fond sur quelqu'un, to rely upon one.

Faire savoir, (*envoyer dire*,) to let one know, to inform,
to send word.

Faire voiles, or
Mettre à la voile, } to set sail.

Faire faire, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

Faire de son pis, to do one's worst.

ne Faire que de, to be just,
or
venir de, to have but just : ex.

Il ne fait que d'arriver, He is just arrived.

ne Faire que, to do nothing but.

se Faire des amis, des ennemis, to get friends, enemies.

se Faire des affaires, to bring one's self into trouble.

s'en Faire accroire, to be conceited, to have a good o-
pinion of one's self.

c'en est Fait de moi, I am undone.

c'en étoit Fait de lui, he was undone.

c'en sera Fait d'elle, she will be undone.

c'en seroit Fait de nous, we should be undone.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered, in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood : ex.

Il lui fit couper la tête, He caused his head to be cut off.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I VALUE it much; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. — I would go and TAKE A WALK, if I were well. — Do you not SHAM SICKNESS now and then? — Did not your brother PLAY TRUANT last week? — That man GOES A GREAT WAY for a trifle. — Mr. P. SETS UP FOR A WIT wherever he goes. — You may RELY UPON what I tell you. — LET ME KNOW whether he will pay you or not. — We SHALL SET SAIL about the fifteenth of the next month. — Why did not you BESPEAK three or four pair of shoes more? — SEND WORD TO your brother, or LET him KNOW, that there is a letter for him here. — I will give him an exercise, and OBLIGE HIM TO DO it in my presence. — She told me, if she were obliged to do it, she WOULD DO HER WORST. — We were BUT JUST come in when it began to rain. — You DO NOTHING BUT play from morning till night. — That young lady WILL GET friends every where. — If you do not take care you WILL BRING YOURSELF INTO TROUBLE. — Permit me to tell you that they ARE TOO MUCH CONCEITED. — Your brother IS UNDONE if his master comes to know of it. — In 1606, King James caused the oath of allegiance to be drawn up; and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which were formed the two parties, called Whigs and Tories.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Aimer mieux, to have rather, to choose rather.

Se donner bien des airs, to take a great deal upon one's

Il ne faut pas s'étonner, it is no wonder. self.

Il me tarde de, I long to.

Penfer, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

S'en prendre à, to lay the fault or blame upon one, to come upon one for.

S'y bien prendre, to go the right way to work.

S'y prendre mal, to go the wrong way to work.

S'y prendre tout autrement, to go quite a different, or another, way to work.

Prendre en mauvaise part, to take amiss.

Venir à bout de, to bring about.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I RATHER CHOOSE to set out now than later. — She told me she HAD RATHER do any thing than speak to Mr. L. — They HAD RATHER have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. — Do not you think Mrs. H. TAKES A GREAT DEAL UPON HERSELF? — IT IS NO WONDER that I do not speak French as well as you; you have been several years in France and I never was there. — I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking, for he GOES THE RIGHT WAY TO WORK. — Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for he GOES THE WRONG WAY TO WORK in every thing he undertakes. — She LONGS to see your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence. — I HAD LIKE to have been killed in coming here. — If he lose he WILL LAY THE

BLAME

BLAME UPON YOU. — Why do you LAY THE BLAME UPON her? she was not even in the room when that happened. — Should not your sister succeed, whom WOULD SHE LAY THE FAULT UPON? — You say you LONG to speak French; and I too, I assure you. — I LONG to tell you something, nevertheless I do not know how to communicate it to you for fear of disoblighing you. — When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable you should GO QUITE A DIFFERENT WAY TO WORK. — I beg of you not TO TAKE A-MISS what I tell you. — Do not begin a thing unless you are sure TO BRING IT ABOUT.



ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Se passer de, to do without, or to be easy without.

Savoir bon gré, to take kindly if.

Trouver mauvais que, to take ill of.*

Tenir maison, to be a housekeeper.

Tenir boutique, to be a shopkeeper.

Ne tenir qu'à, { to be in one's power,
 { to lie in one's power: ex.

Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c. It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c. que, It is not my, your, fault, &c. if.†

S'en tenir à, to stand to.

Vouloir du bien à, to wish one well.

En vouloir à, to have a spite against.

Je souhaiterois pouvoir, I wish I could.

Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie, your life is, was, at stake.

II

* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur, my honour is, was,
concerned in it.

Je ne laisse pas de, I nevertheless, or, for all that.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some ; but, when I have none, I AM EASY WITHOUT. — If you will BE SO KIND AS TO write to my father, to let him know my situation, I SHALL TAKE IT KINDLY OF YOU. — I WISH I COULD do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. — I hope you WILL NOT TAKE IT ILL IF I write to your uncle at the same time. — I SHALL STAND TO what you say. — He HAS BEEN A HOUSE-KEEPER these five-and-twenty years. — How little soever you send him to prison he will TAKE IT KINDLY OF YOU. — IT IS IN HER POWER to live in the country and be very happy there. — IT WILL SOON LIE IN YOUR POWER to make us happy. — I assure you it SHALL NOT BE MY FAULT IF you do not succeed, for I WISH YOU WELL. — Since it LIES IN YOUR POWER to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it? — When you see him you may assure him that, since it IS IN MY POWER to do it, I will not forget him. — You HAVE A SPITE AGAINST my brother, because IT WAS IN HIS POWER two or three times to oblige you and he never would. — I WISH I COULD persuade you how sorry he is for it ; but his honour WAS CONCERNED in not doing it : and, though you are very angry with him, he would, NEVERTHELESS, (or, FOR ALL THAT,) do you service if it were

IN HIS POWER. — Every body admires her humanity ; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, NEVERTHELESS, have done him service if he had lived.



GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.

Of the UNDERSTANDING of LANGUAGES.

Intelligence, f.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) in-
de
troducti^{on} to all the sciences. By it we come, with
parvenir, v.

very little trouble, at the knowledge of a great many fine things, which have cost those who invented them a great deal of pains. By it all times and countries
siècle, m.

lie open to us. By it we become, in some means,
être, v.

contemporary to all ages and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables) us to converse with the most
mettre en état

learned men of all antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for us. We find in them many masters, whom (we are allowed) to consult at leisure ; many
il nous est permis

friends, who are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable conversation improves the mind. It informs
enrichir, v.

us of a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us e-
qually

qually how (to make an advantage) of the virtues and
à profiter, v.

vices of mankind. Without the assistance of languages, all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these
pour, p.

treasures (locked up;) and, for want of having the
fermer, v.

key which alone can open us the door (to them,) we
en, p.

remain poor in the midst of so many riches, and ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.



OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud
naitre, v. *

of ignorance, which is encreased by the false prejudices of a bad education. By study, the former is dispersed and the latter corrected. It gives proportion and ex-
justesse, f.

actness to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs how to range in due order whatever we have to speak or
dire, v.

write, and presents us with the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our conduct, whom, in this sense,
modèle, m.

we may well call, with Seneca, the masters and teachers
précepteur, m.

of mankind. But the usefulness of study is not confined to what we call science, it renders us also more fit for
 business

* See the observation on the preposition *with*.

business and employment; besides, though this
de plus, adv. quand, c.

study were of no other use than (the acquiring) a ha-

bit of labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro-

curing) a steadiness of mind, and (conquering) our a-
fermeté, f.

versions to application and a sedentary life, or whatever
 else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it would still be
assujettir, v.

of very great advantage. In reality, it draws us off
retirer, v.

from idleness, play, and debauchery. It usefully fills
 up the vacant hours of the day, and renders very agree-
 able that leisure, which, without the assistance of lite-
 rature, is a kind of death, and, in a manner, the grave
 of a man whilst he is alive. It enables us to pass a
 right judgment upon other men's labours, to enter in-
 to society with men of understanding, to keep the
fréquenter, v.

best company, (to have a share in) the discourses of the
prendre part à

most learned, to furnish out matter for conversation,
 (without which) we must be silent, to render it more
 agreeable and more useful, by intermixing facts with
 reflections, and setting the one by the other.
relever, v.

INDOLENCE

† These participles active are to be rendered, in French, by the infi-
 nitive.

INDOLENCE CHARACTERISED.

Indolence deprives men of all that activity which should call forth their virtues and make them illustrious. An indolent man is scarcely a man; he is half a woman. He wills and unwills in a breath. He may have good intentions to discharge a duty, while that duty is at a distance; let it but approach, let him view the time of action near, his hands immediately (drop down) *tomber, v.*

in languor. What (can be done) with such a man? *peut on faire* *

He is absolutely good for nothing. Business tires him, reading fatigues him, the service of his country interferes too much with his pleasures, and even attendance at court, though for the time of advancement, is too great a constraint upon him. His life should be passed on a bed of down. If he be employed, *modet, m.* *s'employer, v.*

moments (are as) hours to him; if he be amused, hours *s'embler, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

are as moments. In general, his whole time eludes him; he lets it glide unheeded, like water under *insensiblement, adv.*

a bridge. Ask him what he has done with his morning, * *matinée, f.*

he knows nothing about it, for he has lived without one reflection upon his existence. He has slept as long as it was possible for him to sleep, dressed slowly, amused himself in chat with the first person that called upon

G g

him,

* See the observation on the preposition *with*.

him, and taken several turns in his room till dinner.
faire, v.

Dinner is served up, and the evening will be spent as unprofitably as the morning, and his whole life as this day. (Once more) such a man is good for nothing.
Encore une fois, adv.

It is only pride that can support him in a life so worthless, and so much beneath the character of a man.



ANECDOTE OF THE CARDINAL VIVIERS.

John de Brogni, Cardinal of Viviers, who presided at the council of Constance as dean of the cardinals, had been a hog-driver in his infancy. Some monks, passing by the place where he was busied in that mean employment, and taking notice of his wit and vivacity, offered to carry him to Rome, and bring him up to study. The boy accepted of their offer, and went straight to a shoe-maker to buy a pair of shoes for his journey; the shoe-maker trusted him with part of the price, and told him, smiling, he should pay him the rest when he was made a cardinal. He became a cardinal in reality, and did not forget his former low condition, but took care to perpetuate the memory of it. In a chapel he built at Geneva, over against the gate of St. Peter's church, he caused this adventure to be carved in a stone, where he is represented young and without shoes, keeping hogs under a tree, and all around the wall are the figures of shoes, to express the favour he had

had received from the shoe-maker. This monument is still subsisting at Geneva.



OF ENGLAND.

England is truly the queen of isles, the empire and citadel of Neptune : it is, at the same time, the Peru of Europe, the kingdom of Bacchus, the school of Epicurus, the academy of Venus, the country of Mars, the residence of Minerva, the bulwark of Holland, the scourge of France, the purgatory of the friends of subjection, and, in one word, the paradise of liberty. The ladies there are very handsome ; courage is as if it were natural to the men, but it is carried to an excess that approaches near to brutality. Mental talents there are as great as in any other country, or perhaps greater : it is there that Fortune may be justly said to pour out her favours with a liberal hand. The language of England is a mixture of all those that are spoken in Europe, but it has a greater degree of energy and is more copious than any other. In short, this nation seems to want nothing to complete its happiness but the secret of knowing how to enjoy it. The natural inquietude of the people, and their excessive jealousy with respect to their privileges and freedom, have often plunged them into all the horrors of civil wars, which have brought them (to the very verge) of destruction.

à deux doigts

From the observations I have been enabled to make, I

can with safety say, that no place is more capable of affording pleasure to a young man, who understands the language, and has a fortune sufficient to support the expences of a gentleman.



FRATERNAL AFFECTION.

The king of Cucho had three sons, and, like many other parents, having most affection for the youngest, some days before his death declared him his successor, to the exclusion of his brethren. This proceeding was the more extraordinary as it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. The people, therefore, thought that, after the death of the king, they might, without any crime, raise the eldest son to the throne. This design was universally approved of; but the new king, calling to mind his father's last words, rejected the offer, and, taking the crown, placed it on the head of his youngest brother, publicly declaring that he renounced it, and thought himself unworthy of it, as he was excluded by his father's will, and his father could not now retract what he had done. His brother, being affected with such a generous action, instantly intreated him not to oppose the inclination of the people, who desired him for their ruler. He urged that he alone was the lawful successor to the crown which he refused, and that their father could not infringe the laws of the kingdom; that he had been betrayed by an extravagant fondness; and that, in a word, the people had the power

power of redressing any breach in the established law. Nothing, however, was capable of persuading his brother to accept of the crown. There was a glorious contest between the two princes; and, as they perceived that the dispute would be endless, they retired from court. Thus, each having both conquered and been vanquished, they went to end their days together in peaceful solitude, and left the kingdom to their other brother.



INGRATITUDE PUNISHED:

AN EASTERN TALE.

*He that's ungrateful has no fault but one,
All other crimes may pass for virtues in him.*

YOUNG.

A dervise, venerable by his age, fell ill in the house of a woman, who had been long a widow, and lived in extreme poverty in the suburbs of Balsora. He was so touched with the care and zeal with which she had assisted him, that, at his departure, he said to her, "I have remarked that you have wherewith to subsist alone, but that you have not substance enough to share it with your only son, the young Abdallah. If you will trust him to my care, I will endeavour to acknowledge, in his person, the obligations I have to you for the care you have taken of me." The good woman received this proposal with joy, and the dervise departed with the young man, advertising her, that they must perform a journey which would last near two years. As they travelled, he kept him in affluence, gave him excellent instructions, cured him of a dangerous disease with

which he was attacked ; in fine, he took the same care of him as if he had been his own son. Abdallah a hundred times testified his gratitude to him for all his bounties ; but the old man always answered, " My son, it is by actions that gratitude is proved ; we shall see, in a proper time and place, whether you are so grateful as you pretend."

One day, as they continued their travels, they found themselves in a solitary place, and the dervise said to Abdallah, " My son, we are now at the end of our journey ; I shall employ my prayers to obtain from heaven, that the earth may open and make an entrance wide enough to permit you to descend into a place, where you will find one of the greatest treasures that the earth incloses in her bowels. Have you courage to descend into this subterraneous vault ?" continued he. Abdallah swore to him he might depend upon his obedience and zeal. Then the dervise lighted a small fire, into which he cast a perfume ; he read and prayed for some moments, after which the earth opened, and the dervise said to him, " You may now enter, my dear Abdallah ; remember that it is in your power to do me a great service, and that this is, perhaps, the only opportunity you can ever have of testifying to me that you are not ungrateful. Do not let yourself be dazzled by all the riches you will find there ; think only of seizing upon an iron candlestick with twelve branches, which you will find close to a door ; that is absolutely necessary for me." Abdallah promised every thing, and descended boldly into the vault ; but, forgetting what had been expressly recommended to him, whilst he was filling his vest and his bosom with gold and jewels, which this subterraneous vault inclosed in prodigious heaps, the opening by which he entered closed of itself. He had, however, presence of mind enough to seize upon the iron candlestick, which the dervise had so strongly recommended to him ; and, though the situation he was in was very terrible, he did not abandon himself to despair ; and, thinking only in what manner he should get out of a place which might become his
grave,

grave, he apprehended that the vault had closed only because he had not followed the order of the dervise; he recalled to his memory the care and goodness he had loaded him with, reproached himself with his ingratitude, and finished his meditation by humbling himself before heaven. At length, after much pains and inquietude, he was fortunate enough to find a narrow passage which led him out of this obscure cave; though it was not till he had followed it a considerable way that he perceived a small opening covered with briers and thorns, through which he returned to the light of the sun. He looked on all sides, to see if he could perceive the dervise, but in vain: he designed to deliver him the iron candlestick he so much wished for, and formed a design of quitting him, being rich enough, with what he had taken out of the cavern, to live in affluence without his assistance.

Not perceiving the dervise, nor remembering any of the places through which he had passed, he went on, as fortune had directed him, and was extremely astonished to find himself opposite his mother's house, from which he imagined he was at a great distance. She immediately enquired after the holy dervise. Abdallah told her frankly what had happened to him, and the danger he had run to satisfy his unreasonable desires; he afterwards shewed her the riches with which he was loaded. His mother concluded, upon the sight of them, that the dervise only designed to make trial of his courage and obedience, and that they ought to make use of the happiness which fortune had presented to them; adding, that, doubtless, such was the intention of the holy dervise. Whilst they contemplated upon these treasures with avidity; whilst they were dazzled with the lustre of them, and formed a thousand projects, in consequence of them, they all vanished away before their eyes. It was then that Abdallah sincerely reproached himself for his ingratitude and disobedience; and, perceiving that the iron candlestick had resisted the enchantment, or rather the just punishment which those deserve who do not execute what they promise,
he

he said, prostrating himself,—“What has happened to me is just; I have lost what I had no design to restore, and the candlestick, which I intended to deliver to the dervise, remains with me: it is a proof, that it rightly belongs to him, and, that the rest was unjustly acquired.” As he finished these words, he placed the candlestick in the midst of their little house.

When the night was come, without reflecting upon it, he placed the light in the candlestick. Immediately they saw a dervise appear, who turned round for an hour, and disappeared, after having thrown them an asper. This candlestick had twelve branches. Abdallah, who was meditating all the day upon what he had seen the night before, was willing to know what would happen, the next night, if he put a light in each of them; he did so, and twelve dervises appeared that instant; they turned round also for an hour, and each of them threw an asper as they disappeared. He repeated every day the same ceremony, which had always the same success, but he never could make it succeed more than once in twenty-four hours. This trifling sum was enough to make his mother and himself subsist tolerably: there was a time when they would have desired no more to be happy; but it was not considerable enough to change their fortune: it is always dangerous for the imagination to be fixed upon the idea of riches. The sight of what he believed he should possess; the projects he had formed for the employment of it; all these things had left such profound traces in the mind of Abdallah, that nothing could efface them. Therefore, seeing the small advantage he drew from the candlestick, he resolved to carry it back to the dervise, in hopes that he might obtain of him the treasure he had seen, or, at least, find again the riches which had vanished from their sight, by restoring to him a thing for which he testified so earnest a desire. He was so fortunate as to remember his name, and that of the city where he inhabited. He departed therefore immediately for Magrebi, carrying with him his candlestick, which he lighted every night, and, by that means,
furnished.

furnished himself with what was necessary on the road, without being obliged to implore the assistance and compassion of the faithful. When he arrived at Magrebi, his first care was to enquire in what house, or in what convent, Abounadar lodged; he was so well known, that every body told him his habitation. He repaired thither directly, and found fifty porters, who kept the gate of his house, having each a staff, with a head of gold, in their hands: the court of this palace was filled with slaves and domestics: in fine, the residence of a prince could not expose to view greater magnificence. Abdallah, struck with astonishment and admiration, feared to proceed. Certainly, thought he, I either explained myself wrong, or those to whom I addressed myself, designed to make a jest of me, because I was a stranger: this is not the habitation of a dervise; it is that of a king. He was in this embarrassment, when a man approached him, and said to him, "Abdallah, you are welcome; my master, Abounadar, has long expected you." He then conducted him to an agreeable and magnificent pavilion, where the dervise was seated. Abdallah, struck with the riches he beheld on all sides, would have prostrated himself at his feet, but Abounadar prevented him, and interrupted him, when he would have made a merit of the candlestick, which he presented to him. "You are but an ungrateful wretch, said he to him, do you imagine you can impose upon me? I am not ignorant of any one of your thoughts: and, if you had known the value of this candlestick, you would never have brought it to me; I will make you sensible of its use." Immediately he placed a light in each of its branches; and, when the twelve dervises had turned round for some time, Abounadar gave each of them a blow with a cane, and, in a moment, they were converted into twelve heaps of sequins, diamonds, and other precious stones, "This, said he, is the proper use to be made of this marvellous candlestick. As to me, I never desired it, but to place in my cabinet, as a talisman composed by a sage whom I revere, and am pleased to expose it sometimes to those who come
to

to visit me : and, to prove to you, added he, that curiosity was the only occasion of my search for it, here are the keys of my magazines, open them, and you shall judge of my riches ; you shall tell me whether the most insatiable miser would not be satisfied with them." Abdallah obeyed him, and examined twelve magazines of great extent, so full of all manner of riches, that he could not distinguish which merited his admiration most ; they all deserved it, and produced new desires. The regret of having restored the candlestick, and that of not having found out the use of it, pierced the heart of Abdallah. Abounadar seemed not to perceive it : on the contrary, he loaded him with caresses, kept him some days in his house, and commanded him to be treated as himself. When he was at the eve of the day, which he had fixed for his departure, he said to him, " Abdallah, my son, I believe, by what has happened to you, you are corrected of the frightful vice of ingratitude ; however, I owe you a mark of my affection, for having undertaken so long a journey, with a view of bringing me the thing I had desired ; you may depart, I shall detain you no longer. You shall find, to morrow, at the gate of my palace, one of my horses to carry you ; I make you a present of it, as well as of a slave who shall conduct you to your house ; and two camels loaded with gold and jewels, which you shall choose yourself out of my treasures." Abdallah said to him all that a heart sensible of avarice could express, when its passion was satisfied, and went to lie down till the morning arrived, which was fixed for his departure.

During the night he was still agitated, without being able to think of any thing but the candlestick, and what it had produced. " I had it, said he, so long in my power ; Abounadar, without me, had never been possessor of it : what risks did I not run in the subterraneous vault ? Why does he now possess this treasure of treasures ? Because I had the probity, or, rather, the folly, to bring it back to him : He profits by my labour, and the danger I have incurred by so long a journey.

journey. And what does he give me in return? Two camels loaded with gold and jewels: in one moment the candlestick will furnish him with ten times as much. It is Abounadar who is ungrateful: what wrong shall I do him in taking this candlestick? None certainly; for he is rich: and what do I possess?" These ideas determined him, at length, to make all possible attempts to seize upon the candlestick. The thing was not difficult, Abounadar having trusted him with the keys of his magazines. He knew where the candlestick was placed; he seized upon it, hid it in the bottom of one of the sacks, which he filled with pieces of gold and other riches which he was allowed to take, and loaded it, as well as the rest, upon his camels. He had no other eagerness now than for his departure; and, after having hastily bid adieu to the generous Abounadar, he delivered him his keys, and departed with his horse, his slave, and two camels.

When he was some days journey from Balsora, he sold his slave, resolving not to have a witness of his former poverty, nor of the source of his present riches. He bought another, and arrived, without any obstacle, at his mother's, whom he would scarce look upon, so much was he taken up with his treasure. His first care was to place the loads of his camels and the candlestick in the most private room of the house; and, in his impatience to feed his eyes with his great opulence, he placed lights immediately in the candlestick: the twelve dervises appearing, he gave each of them a blow with a cane with all his strength, lest he should be failing in the laws of the talisman: but he had not remarked that Abounadar, when he struck them, had the cane in his left hand. Abdallah, by a natural motion, made use of his right; and the dervises, instead of becoming heaps of riches, immediately drew from beneath their robes each a formidable club, with which they struck him so hard and so long, that they left him almost dead, and disappeared, carrying with them all his treasure, the camels, the horse, the slave, and the candlestick.

Thus

Thus was Abdallah punished, by poverty, and almost by death, for his unreasonable ambition, which perhaps might have been pardonable, if it had not been accompanied by an ingratitude as wicked as it was audacious, since he had not so much as the resource of being able to conceal his perfidies from the too piercing eyes of his benefactor.

3?

Affer . 170

Acquerir 172.

Bonillir . 174

Courir . 175

Cueillir 176

Formir . 177

Fair 181.

Mentir 182

Mourir 182

offrir . 184

Ouvrir 185

Ouir . 185

Partir

Sentir } 186.

Se repentir }

Servir 188

Sortir . 189

Souffrir 189

Tenir 189

Trepaillier 191

aspaillier 192

venir 192

Vetir } 193.

Revenir }

Apreoir 196

Seoir . 198

Surseoir . 198

Sechoir 199

Echoir 199

Mouvoir . 200

Pouvoir 201.

F I N I S.

Savoir . 202

Valoir . 204

Voir 205

Prevoir 205

Pouvoir 205

Vouloir . 207.

Absoudre . 212

Disoudre .

Atteindre

Battre - 214

Boire . 215

Conclure 216

Conduire 217

Confire : 218

Connoître 219.

Construire 220

Coudre 221

Craindre 224

Croire 225

Croître 226

Dire 226

Nouns .p. 5

Adjectives 29

Degree of Comparison 36

Numbers — 40

Le . article . p. 11

Pronouns . 58 — Personal

Conjunctive 53

Possessive 60

Relative — 68

Interrogative 70

Indefinite 72

Verbs . 87

aux: Verbs — 105

1st Conjugation . 120 . Parler.

2^d do — 128 — Vivre.

3^d — 134 — Recevoir

4th — 141 — Venir

Neuter Verbs — 152

Reflected — 2^o — 158 —

Irregular Verbs . 1st Conjuⁿ — 170

2^o — 2^d — 172

3^o — 3^d — 196

4^o — 4th 2^o — 212

Impersonal — verbs — — 254

Participles — 267

Adverbs — 273

Prepositions — 289

Conjunctions . 303

Interjections — 315

Idiomatical Expressions } 325. on the 327
on avoir —